

# **SACO Participants' Manual**

**Adam L. Schiff  
University of Washington Libraries**

**for the Program for Cooperative Cataloging**

**Second Edition  
revised by the  
PCC Standing Committee on Training  
Task Group to Update the *SACO Participants' Manual***

Program for Cooperative Cataloging  
Washington, D.C.  
2007

**PCC Standing Committee on Training**  
**Task Group to Update the *SACO Participants' Manual***

Adam L. Schiff (Chair), University of Washington  
Karen Jensen, McGill University  
John N. Mitchell, Library of Congress  
Kay Teel, Stanford University  
Alex Thurman, Columbia University  
Melanie Wacker, Columbia University

## Table of Contents

Acknowledgments for the Second Edition	v
Acknowledgments for the First Edition	vi
Introduction	1
Why Participate in SACO?	4
SACO Documentation	6
Practicalities	7
Subject Headings	13
When to Make a SACO Proposal	14
Authority Research for Subjects	16
Subject Authority Proposal Form	18
Guidelines for Formulating LC Subject Heading Proposals	20
Examples of Decisions Involved in Making New Subject Proposals	23
Examples A-D: Headings Supplying More Appropriate Level of Specificity	25
<b>Log-periodic antennas</b>	25
<b>Systems librarians</b>	26
<b>Cataloging of cartographic materials</b>	27
<b>Chinese mitten crab</b>	29
Examples E-J: Headings for Genres and Forms	31
<b>Medical drama</b>	31
<b>Romantic comedy films</b>	33
<b>Reggaetón</b>	35
<b>Khim and Khim music</b>	37
<b>Banjo and double bass music</b>	39
<b>Cootie catchers</b>	40
Examples K-L: Headings Based on an Existing Pattern	42
<b>This (The English word)</b>	42
<b>Historical fiction, Chilean</b>	43
Examples M-S: Headings for Geographic Places	44
<b>Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)</b>	44
<b>Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)</b>	46
<b>Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)</b>	48
<b>Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)</b>	50
<b>Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)</b>	51
<b>Lusatian Mountains</b>	54
<b>Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)</b>	56
<b>Bluewater Lake (Minn.)</b>	59
<b>Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)</b>	61
<b>Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake)</b>	63
<b>Rock River (Yukon)</b>	64
Examples T-V: Headings for Named Buildings, Building Details, and Structures	66
<b>Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)</b>	66
<b>Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)</b>	67
<b>Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)</b>	69

Examples W-X: Headings with Non-Geographic Qualifiers	71
<b>Pictorialism (Photography movement)</b>	71
<b>Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)</b>	72
Example Y: Headings also Appropriate for Use as a Free-Floating Subdivision	73
<b>Weblogs</b>	73
Examples Z-AA: Headings with Non-Free-Floating Subdivisions	76
<b>Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style</b>	76
<b>Wetlands--Interpretive programs</b>	77
Example BB: Establishing a Free-Floating Subdivision Under a Pattern Heading	79
<b>Fishes--Predators of</b>	79
Summary of LC Subject Heading Editorial Process	81
Sample Pages from Tentative Weekly List	84
Sample Pages from Approved Weekly List	87
MARC Authority Format for Subjects	90
Fixed Fields	93
008/06: Direct or Indirect Geographic Subdivision	93
008/09: Kind of Record	94
008/11: Subject Heading System/Thesaurus	96
008/29: Reference Evaluation	97
008/33: Level of Establishment	100
008/39: Cataloging Source	101
Variable Fields	102
010: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN)	102
019: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN) - Local Field	103
040: Cataloging Source	105
053: LC Classification Number	106
1XX: Headings	107
100: Personal Name	111
110: Corporate Name	112
111: Meeting Name	113
130: Uniform Title	114
150: Topical Term	115
151: Geographic Name	122
260: General See Reference	126
360: General See Also Reference	128
4XX: See From Tracings (Used For Cross-References)	129
5XX: See Also From Tracings (See Also Cross-References)	131
667: Nonpublic General Note	133
670: Source Data Found	134
Abbreviated Sources	136
Printed Sources	136
Serials	137
Nonbook Materials	137
Scores	137
Sound Recordings	138

	Videorecordings	138
	Cartographic Materials	138
	Visual Resources	138
	Bibliographic Databases	139
	Remote Electronic Resources	140
	Personal Correspondence	142
	675: Source Data Not Found	144
	680: General Public Notes (Scope Notes)	145
	681: Subject Example Tracing Note	147
	682: Deleted Heading Note	149
	781: Subdivision Heading Linking Entry--Geographic Subdivision	150
	952: Local Notes	151
	953: Cataloger Code	154
Subject Heading Change Proposals		155
	When to Make a Change Proposal	156
	LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form	158
	LC Subject Heading Change Guidelines	159
	Examples of Subject Heading Change Proposals	162
	Examples A-C: Adding cross-references (used for references)	162
	Example D: Adding a see also related term reference	166
	Example E: Adding a broader term reference	167
	Examples F-H: Changing the authorized form of heading	169
	Examples I-J: Revising an 053 Field	173
	Example K: Revision of references	176
Classification		178
	Why Submit Classification Proposals?	179
	Classification Proposals	180
	Sample Pages from Tentative Weekly List	184
	Sample Pages from Approved Weekly List	186
	LC Classification Proposal Form	188
	Examples of Classification Proposals Using the Paper Proposal Form	192
	Example A: New Cutter number	192
	Example B: New Cutter number plus see reference from one entry to another	195
	Example C: New Cutter number in a table; pattern cited	197
	Example D: New Cutter number; hierarchical Cutters	200
	Example E: New whole number; anchor point above	202
	Example F: New whole number; anchor point below	204
	Example G: New decimal number; anchor point above	207
	Example H: New decimal number; pattern cited	209
	Example I: New decimal number; anchor point below	212
	Example J: New decimal number; caption including explanatory note	214
	Example K: Whole and decimal numbers; pattern cited	217
	Example L: Multiple decimal numbers; pattern cited	220
	Example M: Changing a caption	223
	Example N: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference	225

Example O: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference across a range of numbers	227
Example P: See references for pseudonyms of literary authors	229
Example Q: Creating a new number and changing the indention of a range of numbers beneath it	232
Example R: Splitting one number into multiple numbers	234
Example S: Extensive revisions	238
Example T: Canceling (invalidating) a number	241
Glossary of Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms	244
Appendix A: Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH	251
100 (Personal Name)	251
110 (Corporate Name)	253
130 (Uniform Title)	260
150 (Topical Term)	262
151 (Geographic Name)	285
Appendix B: MARC Organization Codes Used in Examples	297

## **Acknowledgments for the Second Edition**

The Task Group to Update the *SACO Participants' Manual* wishes to thank the members of the Standing Committee on Training for its review of this new edition. In particular, thanks are due Steven Arakawa for his detailed comments and suggestions.

Thanks are also due Claudia Hill, Harvard University, who provided the task group with extensive comments on the first edition, and gave particular attention to improving the coverage of establishing headings for buildings, structures, etc. Michael Chohey, University of Hawaii, also provided helpful suggestions.

Once again, the staff in LC's Cataloging Policy and Support Office have helped greatly in making this manual an accurate and useful reflection of LC's policies for establishing subject headings. Lynn El-Hoshy, Millicent Wewerka, Geraldine Ostrove, and Paul G. Weiss all reviewed the final draft and provided extensive comments and corrections.

Please send reports of any errors or omissions, and suggestions for improvements to future editions of the manual, to the Chair of the PCC Standing Committee on Training (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/training.html>).

## Acknowledgments for the First Edition

Numerous people deserve thanks for their encouragement and help with this project. The University of Washington Libraries supported my work on this book and served as a testing laboratory for some of its parts. Carolyn Aamot, Lili Angel, Kathleen Forsythe, Gloria Jeffcott, Allen Maberry, and Barbara Petite of the Monographic Services Division all provided invaluable technical support.

Several people reviewed an early draft of the manual and provided important feedback: Linda Gabel and Susan Westberg at OCLC; Bruce Trumble of Harvard University; Cecilia Botero, University of Florida. Helpful comments and criticisms of a later draft were provided by Lori Robare and Carol Hixson of the University of Oregon. Carol, in her role as chair of the PCC Standing Committee on Training, encouraged me to take my time and do things right, which I hope she and others will agree I have done.

This work would not be what it is were it not for the support and guidance of colleagues at the Library of Congress. Ruta Penkiunas, Ana Cristán, and John Mitchell of the Cooperative Cataloging Team all provided feedback and helped in innumerable ways. In particular, much of what I've learned about SACO and how to create good proposals has come from John Mitchell, who has been my SACO liaison at LC for many years. I've learned much from John's wise and thoughtful counsel.

The staff in LC's Cataloging Policy and Support Office have been an enormous help in making this manual as useful and accurate as I hope it is. Detailed comments, corrections, and suggestions were received from Larry Buzard, Lynn El-Hoshy, Ron Goudreau, Mary Kay Pietris, and Millie Wewerka. In particular, Lynn El-Hoshy went over the manuscript with a fine-tooth comb, catching typos, errors, and misunderstandings large and small, and educating me about LC policy and practice in the process. Lynn's extensive suggestions have made the manual much better than it would otherwise have been. Lynn has long been an important mentor to me, always willing to take time to engage in discussions and explanations of LC subject cataloging policy in person and over email.

Any errors of omission or commission are mine, and I would appreciate learning of them so that they can be corrected in a future edition.

Adam L. Schiff  
Principal Cataloger  
University of Washington Libraries  
Monographic Services Division  
Box 352900  
Seattle, WA 98195-2900 USA  
Phone: (206) 543-8409  
Fax: (206) 685-8782  
Email: [aschiff@u.washington.edu](mailto:aschiff@u.washington.edu)



## **Introduction**

The Library of Congress (LC) is involved with a number of different cooperative cataloging enterprises. The Subject Authority Cooperative Program (SACO) is one of these projects. SACO is one of the four constituents of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging (PCC), the others being NACO (Name Authority Cooperative Project), CONSER (Cooperative Online Serials Program), and BIBCO (Monographic Bibliographic Record Program).

SACO was established to provide a means for libraries to propose new Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) and LC Classification (LCC) numbers. It also allows libraries to submit change proposals for existing subject headings and classification. Proposals are submitted through the Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division at LC and are reviewed weekly by the Cataloging Policy and Support Office. Approved subject headings are distributed as subject authority records by the Cataloging Distribution Service (CDS) to bibliographic utilities and other subscribers and are available via the Web through the *Library of Congress Authorities* site and the *Classification Web* online service. They are also included in the printed *Library of Congress Subject Headings* that is published annually. Approved classification proposals are incorporated into the LC Classification schedules, which are issued irregularly in print but are updated daily online in *Classification Web*.

This manual is intended as an overview of SACO policies and procedures and as a guide to creating SACO proposals. It is not intended to replace essential existing documentation such as the *Subject Cataloging Manual* (SCM). Although information from the *Subject Cataloging Manual* is included throughout, this manual frequently refers the user to the more detailed information and explanations found there, expecting that catalogers will consult it as necessary. Almost all examples included within this manual are taken from actual headings and classification numbers proposed or modified by SACO participants. In a few instances, for pedagogical reasons, examples in this manual have been modified slightly from how they appeared in actual authority records.

In 2004, SACO became a institutional membership-based program of the PCC. Members of any of the other PCC programs are automatically considered to be SACO members. Other libraries wishing to participate in SACO must either:

- 1) submit an application for institutional SACO membership, available on the SACO home page at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/sacoappl.html>, and commit to submitting 10-12 proposals (of any kind) per year.

- 2) join or form a SACO funnel project. Funnel projects consist of a group of libraries (or catalogers from various libraries) that have joined together to contribute subject authority records and/or classification numbers. Proposals are funneled through the coordinator of the project, who then sends them on to LC. Funnel projects typically bring together libraries in a geographic region or with a specific subject focus. Current SACO funnel projects include the African American Subject Funnel Project, the Africana

## ***Introduction***

Subject Funnel Project, and the Hawaii/Pacific Subject Authority Funnel Project. Further information about funnels is available on the SACO home page.

3) contact an institution that is already a SACO member and request that they submit the proposal through their contribution mechanism.

There are no formal training requirements for participation in SACO. However, libraries making proposals are expected to have access to and familiarity with the key documentation containing the policies and practices used by LC in subject heading and classification assignment and in the creation of new subject headings and classification numbers.

Libraries submitting proposals must have a MARC organization code (formerly called NUC symbol or USMARC code) assigned to them by the Library of Congress, or for Canadian libraries, by Library and Archives Canada. A complete list of MARC organization codes is available through the LC's Network Development and MARC Standards Office home page at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/> along with information on how to request a new code. Canadian library symbols can be searched at <http://www.collectionscanada.ca/illcandir-bin/illsear/l=0/c=1>. Instructions for requesting a code from Library and Archives Canada may be found on its Interlibrary Loan home page at <http://www.collectionscanada.ca/ill/s16-206-e.html#3.2.2>.

LC staff provide free general and specialized SACO training at workshops held during conferences of the American Library Association and other organizations. While these workshops are not required in order to participate in the SACO program, catalogers interested in further training are encouraged to register for them. Announcements of workshops are made on electronic discussion lists such as AUTOCAT and on the SACO home page.

There is an electronic discussion list for SACO, called appropriately enough, SACOLIST. Information about subscribing to the list can be found on the SACO home page at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/sacolist.html>. Once subscribed, email postings can be sent to all list members by using the address [sacolist@loc.gov](mailto:sacolist@loc.gov).

LC accepts SACO proposals in a variety of forms. Subject headings can be submitted via mail, fax, email, or via a Web form on the SACO home page. Proposals submitted using the Web form receive expedited processing. Classification proposals may be submitted via mail, email, or fax. Subscribers to *Classification Web* are expected to use a new (as of November 2006) online classification proposal system to submit their classification proposals. SACO proposals are sent to the Library of Congress Cooperative Cataloging Team:

Cooperative Cataloging Team  
Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division  
Library of Congress  
Washington, DC 20540-4382 USA

## ***Introduction***

Phone: (202) 707-2822

Fax: (202) 252-2082 or (202) 707-2824

Email: [saco@loc.gov](mailto:saco@loc.gov)

URL: <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/saco.html>

## *Why Participate in SACO?*

### **Why Participate in SACO?**

Until the 1980s, catalogers from outside the Library of Congress had no easy means to suggest additions or changes to LCSH and LCC. LCSH and LCC were constructed solely on the basis on materials in LC's collections. If a library using LCSH and/or LCC acquired an item on a topic that was not covered by materials in LC's collections and not represented within the existing subject heading list or classification schedules, it had to assign subject headings and/or classification numbers that were not as specific as they needed, or it had to maintain a supplemental list of locally-created headings and classification numbers. With automation and the availability of distributed shared records in bibliographic utilities, the possibilities of cooperation in subject authority creation began to be explored by the Library of Congress and outside libraries. The Library of Congress realized that it could take advantage of bibliographic and authority records created by other libraries and that cooperation was a cost-effective means of developing and enhancing LCSH and LCC.

Why might an outside library consider participating in SACO?

- existing LCSH and LCC are not always adequate
- LC's collections and those of other libraries are not the same; a library might collect in subjects not collected by LC or at a much greater depth than LC; new disciplines and topics are always emerging
- participation allows catalogers to assign subject headings at the appropriate level of specificity; catalogers no longer have to assign headings or classification numbers that are too broad for the item being cataloged
- cooperative cataloging benefits the entire library community and allows even small libraries and highly specialized libraries to share their knowledge and expertise with more general libraries; everyone can contribute to developing a shared authority file and LCSH and LCC become more representative of everyone's collections
- by getting new headings into LCSH and establishing new numbers in LCC, libraries don't have to maintain specialized locally-created lists of headings and classification numbers
- headings contributed by SACO participants frequently get used by LC and other libraries for materials that they acquire; outside libraries often receive and catalog materials needing new subjects or classification numbers more quickly than LC can
- libraries can add useful cross-references to existing headings and change obsolete terms to more current terminology

## *Why Participate in SACO?*

- establishing new numbers and Cutters in LCC means that all libraries using LCC will use the same numbers for materials on the same subject, making copy cataloging and shelflisting simpler and more reliable
- it serves users' needs
- it is intellectually stimulating and satisfying to do research and to see one's work included in the national authority file and LCSH/LCC
- participation requirements in SACO are kept at a minimum to allow as many libraries to contribute as possible. There are no formal training requirements and SACO participants need not belong to a particular bibliographic utility nor even catalog in an online environment in order to submit subject heading and classification proposals.

## **SACO Documentation**

SACO participants are expected to have access to the online Library of Congress authority files for searching purposes. These files are available via bibliographic utilities such as OCLC and from some integrated library system vendors. LC authority records are also available free of charge for browsing and downloading via the *Library of Congress Authorities* Web site at <http://authorities.loc.gov/>. They are also searchable through the *Classification Web* product available from the LC's Cataloging Distribution Service.

Participants are expected to use the most current edition (including updates where applicable) of the following publications, which are available from the Cataloging Distribution Service.

### For subject headings:

*Library of Congress Subject Headings*. Issued annually in print. Updated weekly online in the *Classification Web* product. Weekly lists of new and changed subject headings are available at <http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/subject/weeklylists/>.

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*. Updated twice a year. Available in loose-leaf and through the *Cataloger's Desktop* Web product.

*Free-Floating Subdivisions: An Alphabetical Index*. Issued annually in print.

*MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*. Updated regularly. Available in loose-leaf and through the *Cataloger's Desktop* Web product. A concise version is available on the MARC Standards Web site at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/authority/ecadhome.html>.

### For classification numbers:

*Library of Congress Classification* schedules. Issued irregularly in print by CDS and also available in annual printed editions from other commercial publishers. Updated daily online via the *Classification Web* product. Weekly lists of new and changed classification numbers are available at <http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/>.

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification*. Updated irregularly. Available in loose-leaf and through the *Cataloger's Desktop* Web product.

## **Practicalities**

This section deals with practical aspects of SACO participation and organization of workflow within a SACO library. Each institution will of course need to develop policies and procedures that work for its particular situation.

### **Coordinators**

Libraries should designate a SACO coordinator to act as liaison between their institution and the Library of Congress Cooperative Cataloging Team. In turn, NACO institutions and regular SACO contributors will have a liaison from the Coop Team assigned to their library. This facilitates communication in both directions. The coordinator can act as the chief SACO expert in libraries that have more than one cataloger who will be making subject proposals. He or she may train other staff in subject cataloging and SACO policies, review proposals from individual catalogers before they are sent to LC, and announce when proposals have been approved. The coordinator can be responsible for monitoring the SACO home page and SACOLIST electronic discussion list to stay abreast of news and other developments related to SACO and subject cataloging. A coordinator can maintain a central file of in-process proposals, which may be useful for gathering local statistics and for checking on the status of proposals with LC staff.

### **Cooperative Cataloging Team**

Cooperative Cataloging Team staff review SACO proposals when received, and provide advice and direction to libraries considering making a specific proposal. The Coop Team members are happy to take questions about subject cataloging policy at LC and are willing to help a library formulate a heading proposal so that it is likely to be approved in the editorial process. Personal interaction between SACO coordinators and Coop Cat liaisons mitigates apprehension on the part of program participants about dealing with a large impersonal bureaucracy. When a SACO library does not have an assigned liaison, Coop. Cat. staff will respond to questions and proposals sent to the general SACO account ([saco@loc.gov](mailto:saco@loc.gov)).

### **Direct Contribution vs. Funnel Contribution**

There are several options for organizing contributions to SACO. Proposals can be submitted directly to LC via mail, email, fax, or Web form (available on the SACO home page) from the SACO coordinator at an institution. Proposals submitted via the Web form are given expedited processing and are highly encouraged over the other means of submission. Direct submission of proposals is the method employed by individual libraries of all types and sizes, but is used particularly by institutions that make at least 12 SACO proposals each year.

Another option for SACO contribution has proved attractive to some libraries. Libraries (or individual catalogers at various libraries) in a particular geographic area, and institutions whose focus is on a specific type of material or subject matter, have found it

## ***Practicalities***

beneficial to band together to form what is known as a "funnel project." In a funnel project, one institution or person serves as the coordinator through which contributions from all funnel participants are submitted. This coordinator serves as the liaison between all funnel members and LC. LC interacts only with the coordinator, and not with the individual funnel participants. The MARC organization code of the particular library in the funnel responsible for the proposal is used in the 040 field of the subject authority record. Funnel projects facilitate participation by members at all levels of expertise. The funnel coordinator serves as chief expert, trainer, and reviewer of proposals for all the members. These projects may be of particular interest to smaller libraries with only one or a few catalogers. The SACO home page contains further information about funnel projects, including a helpful FAQ (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/naco/funnelfaq.html>) and descriptions and listings of the current funnel projects and participants.

## **SACO Mentors**

In 2005, the SACO Program initiated a mentoring program. A group of experienced SACO contributors is available to provide advice and review proposals before they are submitted to LC. The list of mentors can be accessed from a link on the SACO home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/SACOMentors.html>). New and prospective participants are encouraged to contact a mentor in their region for help in formulating proposals. Proposals that have been reviewed and approved by a SACO mentor will receive expedited processing at LC.

## **Editorial Review, Feedback, and Tracking of Proposals**

Once a proposal has been sent to LC, it undergoes review by a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team. Libraries assigned a liaison from the Coop Team will have most, if not all, proposals reviewed by that liaison. If there are major problems or missing elements in a proposal, libraries should expect to receive notification of this from Coop, and the library will likely be asked to revise the proposal and resubmit it. In some instances, the Coop Team member may indicate that a particular proposal is simply not viable, because it does not adhere to current subject policies and guidelines. The Team member may be able to suggest ways in which a topic can be expressed using existing LCSH headings and subdivisions.

Following initial review in Coop, proposals are forwarded to the Cataloging Policy and Support Office, where they are assigned to a future weekly list. Once a proposed heading has been placed on a list, the contributor knows the date of the editorial meeting at which the heading will be discussed. Tentative weekly lists of proposals are posted on the SACO home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html>). At this stage, SACO proposals are considered pre-approved and may be used on bibliographic records. Pre-approval means that a library need not hold an item it is cataloging to await the decision of the editorial meeting. Should a proposed heading be revised at the editorial meeting and approved in a different form, it is the responsibility of the contributing library to make the necessary revisions to any bibliographic records contributed to the utilities, so that the headings in those records reflect the approved form. If the



contributing library is unable to revise the record in a utility (e.g., if a record in OCLC has been used by another library and the original library that contributed it is not authorized to change the master record), it must report the change needed to that utility.

Tentative weekly lists of classification proposals are available on the SACO home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html>). Participants using the *Classification Web* proposal system who include their email address in the online proposal form will receive an email notifying them when a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list. Contributors submitting proposals via the paper proposal form will need to monitor the tentative weekly lists to see when their proposal will be considered. After the weekly editorial meetings, participants who have provided their email address through *Class Web* will be notified whether their proposal was approved, rejected, or approved with modifications. Contributors may also track their proposals via the weekly lists of approved new and changed classification numbers that are posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (<http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/>).

For classification proposals, particularly for Cutter numbers, it is usually advisable to hold an item until a number has been approved by LC. This minimizes the re-marking that might need to be done if the library assigned a class number that does not match the one established by LC. As with subject proposals, libraries should change the bibliographic record(s) they contributed to a utility if the classification number they proposed through SACO and included in the record(s) was not approved or was modified by LC.

If a heading proposed through SACO is revised by the editorial meeting, the library's SACO coordinator can expect to be notified of the change by a member of the Coop Team (this will be their Coop liaison if they have one). Coordinators will also be notified if a proposal was not approved, was marked "resubmit" on the list, or was withdrawn. Proposals that are marked "not approved" may not be resubmitted. Proposals marked "resubmit" may be revised and resubmitted once the issues raised by the editorial meeting have been addressed. Explanations for proposals that were not approved and information on proposals marked "resubmit," with instructions for resubmitting them, are provided in the *Summary of Decisions* from the weekly editorial meeting that are posted to the SACOLIST and to the SACO website (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/cpsod/cpsodeditorial.html>) shortly after the editorial meeting. The Coop Team liaison will also be able to provide specific information about how the SACO participant can revise a proposal for resubmission. The following are examples from various summaries of decisions of proposals marked "not approved" or "resubmit."

Not Approved:

*Armenian antiquities*

This proposal and its proposed general see-also reference to create the subdivision **--Antiquities, Armenian** was not approved. This concept is covered by the existing free-floating formulations **Armenians--[place]--Antiquities** and **Armenia--Antiquities**.

## *Practicalities*

### *Education and globalization*

The proposed UF reference **Internationalization of education** does not appear to be a synonym for the heading. The proposal was not approved.

### *Gay and lesbian fiction; Gay and lesbian literature*

Works about literature dealing with gay/lesbian themes, characters, etc., are entered under subject headings such as **Homosexuality in literature**; **Gays in literature**; etc. Additional subject headings are assigned to show the language, nationality, or literary form, such as **American fiction--History and criticism**; **German literature--20th century--History and criticism**. Collections of such literary works are entered under **[topic]--Fiction**; **[topic]--Literary collections**; etc., with additional subject headings for the nationality, literary form, etc. Literary works written by gays or lesbians are entered under **Gays' writings** or **Lesbians' writings** with appropriate national or language qualifier. Works that discuss multiple relationships between literature and homosexuality and entered under **Homosexuality and literature**. The concepts expressed in the proposed headings are therefore already provided for in LCSH, and the proposals are not approved.

### *Traffic fatalities--Causes*

The information submitted concerning the work being cataloged implies that the causes being discussed, such as excessive speed, are the causes of the traffic accidents not the causes of death. The heading **Traffic accidents** is used for such works. The proposal was not approved.

### *Verbal ability tests*

According to *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, instruction sheet H 2186, sec. 3.c., the subdivision **--Testing** is used under phrase headings for types of ability for both tests and testing related to these abilities. The free-floating combination **Verbal ability--Testing** would be used for tests of verbal ability. The proposed heading was not approved.

Resubmit:

### *Fishes--Effect of water currents on*

Subdivisions of the type **--Effect of [concept or phenomenon] on** are derivative. The terminology used in the subdivision should reflect the terminology used for the concept or phenomenon in its basic heading. That means that a heading for the concept or phenomenon needs to be present in LCSH in order for a subdivision to be proposed. A general see also reference to the free-floating subdivision should be added to the subject authority record for the basic heading. In addition, UF references of the type "Effect of [topic] on [...]" should not be made in the record for the pattern heading/free-floating subdivision combination. This proposal may

be resubmitted along with a proposal to establish a heading for the phenomenon of water currents.

*Legislative buildings*

There are many individual parliamentary, capital, and legislative office buildings established in *LCSH*. If this newly proposed heading were to be approved, the BTs for these individual buildings would need to be updated. This proposal may be resubmitted together with proposals to update the BTs for these individual buildings.

*Maure (African people)*

Further investigation is required to determine whether this heading conflicts with the existing heading **Hassaniyeh (Arab people)** and if so to determine the appropriate form for the heading and references. The proposal may be resubmitted.

*Shots (Cocktails)*

No authority research was cited to support the form of this heading. Since the usual meaning of the term **shots** in relation to alcoholic beverages indicates a measurement of liquor, not a type of cocktail, documentation is needed to support a proposal for another meaning. The proposal may be resubmitted if such support is found and supplied with the proposal.

*Teen films*

Further investigation is required to determine the relationship between this proposed heading and the existing heading **Young adult films**. If they are found to be separate concepts, scope notes would be needed to distinguish between them. If it is determined that both represent the same concept, a decision will need to be made as to which is the better terminology for the heading, and the references will need to be revised. The proposal may be resubmitted.

Proposals are marked “withdrawn” when something further needs to be done at LC before the proposal can proceed as is, or in a revised form. “Withdrawn” generally means that CPSO staff wish to resolve problems with related headings, include the proposal in a related project, etc. CPSO staff take responsibility for revising and/or resubmitting “withdrawn” proposals. Withdrawn proposals are generally not explained in the *Summary of Decisions*. The Coop Team liaison will be able to provide the explanation announced at the editorial meeting. The following is an example of a withdrawn proposal that was explained the *Summary of Decisions*:

*Steamboat lines CANCEL Steamship lines*

These proposals to cancel the headings **Steamboat lines** and **Steamboat lines--Flags, insignia, etc.** and replace them with "Steamship lines" and "Steamship lines--Flags, insignia, etc." were withdrawn from the list. The proposals are

## ***Practicalities***

incomplete because there are other subdivisions established under **Steamboat lines** as well as BT/NT references that would also need to be revised to effect these changes. However, the meeting feels that changes to headings in this area should not be undertaken until a thorough review of the existing heading **Steamboats**, which has a UF Steamships, and related headings is carried out at LC.

If not contacted by a member of the Coop Team within a week of an editorial meeting, a library should assume that all of its headings on that week's list have been approved. This can be confirmed when the approved weekly list for that week is posted on LC's Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (<http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/subject/weeklylists/>), which can take as long as two weeks after the editorial meeting.

Subsequent to each editorial meeting, revisions to a heading and/or its references are made in the LCSH Master Database and the subject authority records for that weekly list are then distributed by the Cataloging Distribution Service to utilities and other subscribers. New and revised headings also then appear online in the *Library of Congress Authorities* Web site and on *Classification Web*. Generally, subject authority records can be retrieved in the utilities six weeks after a SACO proposal was submitted. If after submitting a proposal a library does not receive notification of a problem and the proposal does not appear on a tentative weekly list within four weeks, it is advisable to contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team to inquire about the status of the proposal.

## **Statistics**

Libraries can decide to maintain local statistics for SACO proposals in a variety of ways. For example, in the Monographic Services Division at the University of Washington, each cataloger maintains a monthly sheet of statistics, which includes a box to record SACO proposals that he or she has made. The Program for Cooperative Cataloging maintains its own statistics on SACO proposals that have been approved. New subject headings, changed subject headings, new classification numbers, and changed classification numbers are all counted separately. Monthly and annual (October through September) statistics are available on the PCC home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/stats/stats.html>). Statistics are compiled for both individual contributing libraries as well as for funnel projects. Libraries will need to decide if they wish to rely on the PCC statistics or if they need to maintain other statistics locally.

## Subject Headings

## *When to Make a SACO Proposal*

### **When to Make a SACO Proposal**

Library of Congress practice is to assign to the work being cataloged one or more subject headings that best summarize the overall contents of the work and provide access to its most important topics (SCM H 180). LC only assigns headings for topics that comprise at least 20% of a work, although other libraries may choose to diverge from this policy for local reasons.

Headings should be assigned that are as specific as the topics covered in a work. If a needed heading is not yet established in the subject authority file, nor able to be constructed using established headings and free-floating subdivisions, then a new subject heading should be formulated and proposed via SACO.

In some cases, the form of a new heading will be readily apparent, because an already established pattern exists in LCSH. Citing the work being cataloged and the pattern may be sufficient in such situations. However, in most cases the cataloger must do additional authority research to corroborate or verify a heading for a concept in authoritative reference sources (see **Authority Research for Subjects**, p. 16). In some instances, the cataloger will find that the term or phrase used in the work being cataloged is not the one in predominant use in other sources. The predominant or most authoritative form should be preferred as the established form of a new subject heading. Variants from the predominant form can be recorded as cross-references.

SCM H 180 sec. 4 describes the cases when catalogers should assign headings that are broader or more general than the topic that it is intended to cover: when it is not possible to establish a precise heading, when an array of headings is needed to express the topic, or when the assignment of a more general heading is called for by special instructions in the SCM.

SCM H 187 instructs catalogers to establish a subject heading for a topic that represents a discrete, identifiable concept when it is first encountered in a work being cataloged, rather than after several works on the topic have been published and cataloged. Additional research often shows that there already were other works published about that topic that could have been assigned the new subject. Some libraries, including the Library of Congress, identify the items in their collection that should have been assigned the new heading and, once the heading has been approved, add it to the appropriate bibliographic records in their catalogs.

When a work being cataloged is on a topic that appears to be new but is judged to be not yet discrete and identifiable, LC practice is assign the available subject headings that most accurately designate the topic(s) of the work.

For newly emerging topics and disciplines, it is not always easy to find consensus among authorities as to what term should be used for the topic. Generally, prefer current American usage for a concept. In cases where there is no consensus among American authorities, SCM H 187 instructs catalogers to make an intuitive judgment based on

available evidence (in some cases the only evidence may be the work being cataloged) and then to provide UF references from any significantly different terms that have been found for the same concept. If a different term for the concept from the one selected for the heading becomes well established at a later date, the heading can be changed to the more appropriate form through a SACO change proposal (see **Subject Heading Change Proposals**, p. 155).

In some cases specific guidelines exist for when to establish a new heading. For example, headings for fictitious characters are established only when the character has appeared in three or more different works or when a work of history or criticism about the character is cataloged (see SCM H 1610 and H 1790, as well as *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc.*, 2nd ed., American Library Association, 2000).

Headings may also be established for forms, types, styles, genres, etc., of literature, music, art, motion pictures, videos, and other audiovisual materials (e.g., see SCM H 250 and H 1916.3-1917.5 for music, H 1250-1255 for art and photography, H 1775-1828 for literature, H 1945.5 for posters, H 2070 for software, and H 2230 for visual materials and non-music sound recordings).

## **Authority Research for Subjects**

Authority research is the heart and soul of making subject heading proposals. If it has been determined that a new subject heading or subject heading-subdivision combination that is not free-floating is needed (see **When to Make a SACO Proposal**, p. 14), the cataloger must usually undertake authority research to determine the form of the heading that will be proposed, variant forms that will be recorded as cross-references, and appropriate broader and/or related terms.

In some cases (e.g., headings established according to a pattern) a single 670 citation for the work being cataloged may be all that is necessary. Most commonly, however, to carry out adequate authority research the cataloger must consult additional sources. It is necessary to seek corroboration or verification in other sources of the term or phrase being proposed as the heading. An individual work may or may not be accurate or authoritative or may or may not present or advocate a particular point of view. Other sources may provide information on variant forms that should be included on authority records as references. In some cases, the other sources will make it clear that the term or phrase found in the item being cataloged is not the standard accepted one.

How many and what kinds of additional sources should be consulted? Generally, citation of authoritative reference sources is preferred over citation of usage in titles to support the choice of heading. Examples of authoritative reference sources include dictionaries and glossaries, encyclopedias, thesauri and other subject heading lists, indexes, atlases, and gazetteers. Many reference sources are now available electronically and may be used instead of or in addition to their print counterparts. The SACO home page provides a list of Web-based reference resources (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/resources.html>). Usage in titles (e.g., titles found in a bibliographic utility) or information found in non-reference sources may be cited and can be a good source of variant terminology for UF references.

It is important to remember that sources consulted must be relevant to the topic being established. For general topics general dictionaries (such as *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language* and *Random House Webster's Unabridged Dictionary*) or encyclopedias (such as *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, *The World Book Encyclopedia*, and the online *Wikipedia*) are appropriate. Subject dictionaries and encyclopedias covering specific disciplines should be consulted for specialized or technical terms and jargon.

There is no definitive list of preferred reference sources that must be consulted. Catalogers should exercise their judgment as to what sources are appropriate and useful. In most cases, the items in a library's reference collection and/or electronic reference resources should be adequate. Sources in a library's general collection may also be utilized as may other resources such as audiovisual materials, maps, and non-reference electronic resources.

There is no limit to the number of sources that may be cited in an authority proposal, but SACO does not require that catalogers perform exhaustive research. The goal is subject authority research that is good enough to indicate a consensus of usage in relevant sources. The quantity of authority work deemed sufficient will vary with the topic and



### *Authority Research for Subjects*

what the consulted reference sources reveal. If the information found in the work being cataloged is confirmed in at least one relevant, authoritative source, that is probably all that is needed in most cases. If conflicting information is found in the first two sources checked, further sources may need to be checked to determine if a consensus can be found. It is sometimes necessary to weigh the information found in various sources and to ascertain which source is more authoritative or current.

For obscure topics or topics not likely to be found in sources other than the work being cataloged, it is still necessary to do authority research to demonstrate that the topic was properly investigated. Relevant sources searched in which no information was found to justify or support the heading being proposed should be cited in authority proposals in a 675 field. Examples of situations where this may be necessary are works on specific archaeological sites, brand name products, computer languages, and newly described animal and plant species. In such cases, it is helpful to provide succinct explanatory information from the work cataloged in the subfield \$b of the 670 citation for that work.



## Subject Authority Proposal Form

### Instructions for using form; please read carefully before inputting proposal:

1. Use the pull-down menus to select the appropriate MARC 21 tag for each field.
2. **Do not explicitly code for an initial subfield** in any field (i.e., \$a, \$w, \$z)
3. **Use the dollar sign \$** to note a delimiter before the subfield code (e.g, \$x, \$z)
4. **If proposed heading is 100, 110, 111, or 130, supply** the appropriate indicator; 150s-151s do not require indicator; apply this instruction to 4xxs and 5xxs also.
5. 1XX, 4XX, or 5XX **headings with subdivisions** require keying the subfields by using a delimiter (\$) and the appropriate MARC subfield code.
6. Add diacritics following the affected letter (e.g., Me(acute)xico) as appropriate. **Please save time by copying and pasting from the list of diacritics.** Using this lists helps prevent typos and provides a uniform name for the diacritic.
7. When citing geographic coordinates **spell out** the coordinates (e.g., 47deg. 35min. 34sec.N)
8. For additional help go to the [Guidelines for formulating LCSH proposals](#).

Asterisk \* indicates required field.

Today's date:

008/06 Direct or indirect geographic subdivision:

Select decision from pull down tab (cf. SCM H364, sec. 3)

040:  \*(Input institutional MARC 21 code; **not utility code**)

053:  Input classification number, if appropriate (cf. SCM H365)

\* Select 1XX from pull-down tab. Diacritics list

Select 4XX from pull-down tab.

Select 4XX from pull-down tab.

Select 4XX from pull-down tab.

Select 4XX from pull-down tab.

Broader Term (BT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. **Do not input subfields \$w or \$a; Subfield information is supplied based on selection of this field.**

Broader Term (BT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. **Do not input subfields \$w or \$a.**

Related Term (RT) select 5XX from pull-down tab. **Subfield information is supplied based on selection of this field. Note: RTs require an accompanying change proposal or an accompanying new reciprocal heading; please note this in comments field below.**

670 Work cat.: (Include **subfield \$b** when appropriate)

670 Additional Sources: (cf. SCM H202, paragraph 2.a.(1))

670 Additional Sources:

670 Additional Sources:

670 Additional Sources:

675 Sources not found: (When supplying more than one title precede each with a **subfield \$a**)

680 Scope Note: (cf. SCM H400 for instructions); Return to top of page

**If the 1XX is a 151, supply the 781 field according to SCM H836. Do not supply initial subfield \$z; supply 2nd subfield \$z as needed** (e.g., Mexico \$z Tanchipa Mountains)

781 Geographic subdivision:

When the 781 field is not appropriate (e.g., when the 151 heading is a celestial body or a geographic entity in a city; cf. SCM H836) cut and paste this note into a 667 field: This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

667 Note:

952:  LC bib. records to be changed (**optional**)

952: LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet: (**Do not key any subfields in this area; use dashes to indicate subdivisions**)

Comments/Additional 4XX, 5XX, or 670 fields.

\* Name of cataloger: (**include name of SACO coordinator at this institution, if different from person submitting the proposal**)

\* E-mail:

[NOTE: Only one address please; providing more than one address causes a proposal to fail electronic contribution.]



## Guidelines for Formulating LC Subject Heading Proposals

These instructions are to be used when filling in the Subject Authority Proposal Form found on the SACO home page. In addition to these guidelines, consult the appropriate fields discussed in the **MARC Authority Format for Subjects** section of this manual.

### **008/06: Geographic subdivision:**

- May Subd Geog**
- Not Subd Geog**
- No Decision**

Most headings should be authorized to be divided geographically unless they are inherently geographic in nature and MARC-tagged as a 151 or they represent abstract concepts with no geographic orientation. If the new heading should be divided geographically, place an X on the **May Subd Geog** line. If unable to determine the appropriate choice, leave this field blank. For further guidance please refer to LC *Subject Cataloging Manual* (SCM) instruction sheets **H 194** and **H 364**.

### **040: Requestor's MARC 21 organization code:** \_\_\_\_\_

Please enter the institution's MARC 21 organization code (formerly NUC symbol/ USMARC code). Do not use the institution's OCLC code.

### **053: Library of Congress Classification Number**

Many headings do not require a 053. For guidance on when to add the 053 field and whether the number needs a qualifier, refer to SCM **H 365**.

### **HEADING 1XX:** \_\_\_\_\_

Indicate the proposed heading in this area. A subject heading proposed for inclusion in LCSH must be supported by adequate, appropriate authority research demonstrating a clear preference for the proposed form. Cite reference sources in which supporting information was found in separate **670s**. When in doubt, contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team.

#### **4XX: Cross-References (or Used For References (UF))**

For guidance on how references should be constructed, refer to SCM **H 195** and **H 373**. Cite sources in 670 fields for each additional UF reference not already justified.

#### **5XX: Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References**

For guidance on how to determine an appropriate BT and on how to determine if headings qualify to be related term references, refer to SCM **H 370**.

#### **670: Source Citations**

Provide the title of the item being cataloged (work cat.) which prompted the need for the subject heading as the first 670. Should the heading itself not be found in the title, indicate where in the item the term, concept, name, etc. was found and if possible a sentence or two from the item describing or explaining the heading in question. Cf. SCM **H 200**, **H 202**, and **H 203**. "It is seldom acceptable to cite only the work cataloged as authority for a new concept, except in the case of certain named entities such as obscure archaeological sites, brand name products, computer languages, etc. Although the concept may have been found only in the work being cataloged, other sources appropriate to the subject area in question should be cited to demonstrate that the concept was properly investigated"--SCM **H 202**.

#### **675: Sources not found**

Cite the titles of sources that were consulted but in which **no** information about the heading or its references was found.

#### **680: Scope Notes**

Include in this area the text of a note to define or limit the use of a particular heading. For guidance on drafting a scope note, refer to SCM **H 400**.

#### **781: Geographic subdivision**

If the 1XX is a 151, supply a 781 field according to SCM **H 836**. Note that when the 781 field is not appropriate for a heading coded 151 (e.g., when the heading is a celestial body or a geographic entity in a city; cf. SCM **H 836**) supply a 667 field with this note: *This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.*

#### **952: Bib records to change**

Optional field. The Cooperative Cataloging Team will complete.

**952: LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet**

Supply the number of the SCM instruction sheet on which the 1XX was based (e.g., if 1XX is for a fictitious character, cite SCM **H 1610**). When using patterns, supply only those called for by SCM **H 202**.

### **Examples of Decisions Involved in Making New Subject Proposals**

The examples in this section illustrate some of the analytical processes, decision making, and research that a cataloger would do in order to decide that a new subject heading (and classification number in some cases) is needed, what the form of the heading should be, and what other proposals may be necessary as a result of the first proposal.

The following proposals are grouped together by type of heading in order to help users of this manual identify examples relevant to a particular situation.

Examples A-D: Headings supplying more appropriate level of specificity

**Log-periodic antennas; Systems librarians; Cataloging of cartographic materials; Chinese mitten crab**

Examples E-J: Headings for genres and forms

**Medical drama; Romantic comedy films; Reggaetón; Khim music; Banjo and double bass music; Cootie catchers**

Examples K-L: Headings based on an existing pattern

**This (The English word)  
Historical fiction, Chilean**

Examples M-S: Headings for geographic places

**Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh); Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska); Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut); Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.); Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador); Lusatian Mountains; Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.); Bluewater Lake (Minn.); Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake); Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake); Rock River (Yukon)**

Examples T-V: Headings for named buildings, building details, and structures

**Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.); Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.); Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)**

Examples W-X: Headings with non-geographic qualifiers

**Pictorialism (Photography movement); Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)**

Example Y: Headings also appropriate for use as a free-floating subdivision

**Weblogs**

Examples Z-AA: Headings with non-free-floating subdivisions

**Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style  
Wetlands--Interpretive programs**

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

Example BB: Establishing a free-floating subdivision under a pattern heading  
**Fishes--Predators of**



**Headings supplying more appropriate level of specificity**

Example A

Title of work being cataloged: *High gain log-periodic antennas.*

Existing LCSH, **Antennas (Electronics)**, is not at the appropriate level of specificity. A proposal for the more specific concept of log-periodic antennas is needed.

Research in authoritative reference sources shows that the term used is the same as the one in the title of the work cataloged.

SACO proposal: **Log-periodic antennas**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Log-periodic antennas
- 550 \$w g \$a Antennas (Electronics)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Chen, Y.S. High gain log-periodic antennas, 1967.
- 670 \$a McGraw-Hill dict. sci. tech. \$b (log-periodic antenna: a broad-band antenna which consists of a sheet of metal with two wedge-shaped cutouts, each with teeth cut into its radii along circular arcs; characteristics are repeated at a number of frequencies that are equally spaced on a logarithmic scale)
- 670 \$a The new IEEE standard dict. of electrical and electronics terms, 1993 \$b (log-periodic antenna. Any one of a class of antennas having a structural geometry such that its impedance and radiation characteristics repeat periodically as the logarithm of frequency. Any one of a class of antennas having a structural geometry such that its electrical characteristics repeat periodically as the logarithm of frequency.)

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example B

Title of work being cataloged: *Educational background of systems librarians*.

Existing LCSH, **Librarians**, is too broad for this work. A heading is needed for the specific concept of systems librarians.

Authority research shows that the predominant form in use is systems librarians. Other forms found include: automated systems librarians; systems managers; network systems librarian.

SACO proposal: **Systems librarians**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

A scope note is included in the proposal to provide clarification as to when the heading should be used (see p. 145 for further information on scope notes and MARC field 680).

A classification proposal is also needed for this work (see classification proposal example A) if the library cataloging it classifies it as a separate monograph using LCC. In this case, a classification number is already established for types of librarians, but a Cutter number for systems librarians is needed. In a case like this, include the proposed classification number in the 053 field and submit the subject heading proposal together with the classification proposal.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 \$a Z682.4.S94  
150 \$a Systems librarians  
450 \$a Automated systems librarians  
450 \$a Library systems managers  
450 \$a Network systems librarians  
450 \$a Systems managers, Library  
550 \$w g \$a Librarians  
670 \$a Work cat.: Dorrian, J.M. Educational background of systems librarians, c1998.  
670 \$a LC database, May 14, 1999 \$b (systems librarians; systems managers)  
670 \$a AltaVista search, May 14, 1999 \$b (systems librarian; network systems librarian)  
680 \$i Here are entered works on librarians who specialize in planning, developing, maintaining, and supporting automated systems and services in libraries.  
952 \$a Classification proposal faxed to Coop May 14, 1999

Example C

Title of work being cataloged: *Maps and related cartographic materials : cataloging, classification, and bibliographic control.*

Existing LCSH, **Cataloging of maps**, is too narrow for the content of this work. The book covers all types of cartographic materials, not just maps. On the other hand, the existing heading **Cataloging of nonbook materials** is too broad for this work.

Examination of LCSH shows that the form used to express the concept of cataloging a specific type of material is **Cataloging of <type of material>**. The cataloger must now determine what term should be used for the concept of cartographic materials. Authority research shows that the appropriate term to use is "cartographic materials."

SACO proposal: **Cataloging of cartographic materials**

The proposed heading is coded "May Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location, including disciplines and fields of study, and processes, activities, and phenomena.

Because the concept "cartographic materials" is not established in LCSH, and because it is needed as the broader term on the proposed heading, an additional SACO proposal must be made: **Cartographic materials**. SACO change proposals must also be made to add **Cartographic materials** as the broader term on the existing headings for specific types of cartographic materials (**Globes**; **Maps**; **Remote-sensing images**). These changes can be seen on the second sample page of Tentative Weekly List 11 (March 22, 2000) reproduced in this manual (p. 86).

If the SACO library uses LCC, a classification number must also be assigned to the work cataloged. Research shows that there is an existing number, Z695.6, with the caption **Maps. Atlases**. The cataloger decides to expand the caption so that this number can also be used for cataloging of cartographic materials. A classification proposal is submitted to change the caption under Z695.6 to **Maps. Atlases. Cartographic materials** and the existing number is included in the 053 of the subject proposal for **Cataloging of cartographic materials**. Since a classification number for **Cartographic materials** is not needed for the work being cataloged, no classification proposal is made at this time for that concept and the authority proposal for it contains no 053.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 \$a Z695.6

150 \$a Cataloging of cartographic materials

550 \$w g \$a Cartographic materials

670 \$a Work cat.: Maps and related cartographic materials, c1999: \$b p. xiii

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

- (cataloging of cartographic materials) p. xv (digital geospatial data, remote-sensing images, geologic sections, maps, globes, atlases)
- 670 \$a Cartographic materials in UNIMARC, 1979.
- 670 \$a ISBD (CM) : International Standard Bibliographic Description for Cartographic Materials, 1977.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Cataloging of maps; Cataloging of nonbook materials

### 008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Cartographic materials
- 550 \$w g \$a Nonbook materials
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Maps and related cartographic materials, c1999: \$b p. xv (digital geospatial data, remote-sensing images, geologic sections, maps, globes, atlases, map series)
- 670 \$a Anglo-American cataloguing rules, c1998: \$b p. 616 (Cartographic material. Any material representing the whole or part of the earth or any celestial body at any scale. Cartographic materials include two- and three-dimensional maps and plans (including maps of imaginary places); aeronautical, navigational, and celestial charts; atlases; globes; block diagrams; sections; aerial photographs with a cartographic purpose; bird's-eye views (map views), etc.)
- 670 \$a British Library. Catalogue of cartographic materials in the British Library, 1975-1988, 1989.

Example D

Title of work being cataloged: *The Chinese mitten crab (Eriocheir sinensis), previous invasions and policy decisions : implications for improving Washington State aquatic nuisance species management.*

There is no existing heading in LCSH for this species. The heading **Crabs** is far too broad. A heading is needed for this specific animal.

Authority research shows that there is a standard common name for the crab species *Eriocheir sinensis*: Chinese mitten crab. No other variant forms of name are found. SCM H 1332 instructs catalogers to prefer the common name of animals and plants if it is in popular use and unambiguous. Furthermore, it says to prefer the common name for animals and plants of economic importance, such as pests or cultivated plants. The crab in question is an introduced pest.

SACO proposal: **Chinese mitten crab**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for living, extinct, or fossil organisms.

SCM H 1332 instructs catalogers to add a BT reference from the next broader level in the taxonomic hierarchy. The next level up from species is genus, which in this case is *Eriocheir*. Since **Eriocheir** has not yet been established in LCSH, a separate proposal is also needed for it. Authority research must be done to verify that *Eriocheir* is a valid name, to determine if a standard common name exists for this genus, and to ascertain the name of the next broader level of taxonomic hierarchy, which is found to be the family Grapsidae. Since **Grapsidae** is already established in LCSH, the process stops here and no additional proposals are necessary.

Although the work being cataloged is a thesis and the library does not assign LC classification to theses, the appropriate classification number from LCC may be included in the proposals. If an 053 is not included by the SACO library, it will be added by staff at LC.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 \$a QL444.M33 \$c Zoology  
150 \$a Chinese mitten crab  
450 \$a Eriocheir sinensis  
450 \$a Mitten crab, Chinese  
550 \$w g \$a Eriocheir  
670 \$a Work cat.: Draheim, R.C. The Chinese mitten crab (*Eriocheir sinensis*), previous invasions and policy decisions, 1999.  
670 \$a Common and sci. names of aquatic inverts. from the U.S. and Canada.

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

- Decapod crustaceans, 1989: \$b p. 44 (Eriocheir sinensis, Chinese mitten crab)
- 670 \$a Integrated Taxonomic Information System, via WWW, July 14, 2000 \$b (Eriocheir sinensis. Common name: Chinese mitten crab. Rank: species. Usage: valid)
- 670 \$a Index to organism names, via WWW, July 17, 2000 \$b (Eriocheir sinensis. Group: Crustacea. Classification: Brachyura)
- 670 \$a LC database, July 17, 2000 \$b (ti: The Chinese mitten crab; subj. hdg.: Eriocheir sinensis)
- 675 \$a Web. 3

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 053 0 \$a QL444.M33 \$c Zoology
- 150 \$a Eriocheir
- 550 \$w g \$a Grapsidae
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Draheim, R.C. The Chinese mitten crab (Eriocheir sinensis) ... 1999.
- 670 \$a Integrated Taxonomic Information System, via WWW, July 17, 2000 \$b (Eriocheir. Vernacular name: not available. Rank: Genus. Usage: valid. Family: Grapsidae)
- 670 \$a Index to organism names, via WWW, July 17, 2000 \$b (Eriocheir. Group: Crustacea. Classification: Brachyura)
- 675 \$a Web. 3

## Headings for genres and forms

### Example E

Title of work being cataloged: *Patient A*.

*Patient A*, a play by Lee Blessing, tells the story of Kimberly Bergalis, who was infected with HIV during a dental procedure and died from AIDS in 1991. Many libraries assign form/genre headings for literary works, following the *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc.* (GSAFD) and/or the literature instructions in the SCM. At the time of this proposal, the cataloger found one useful existing genre heading in LCSH to assign to this play (**Biographical drama**), but no genre heading was available that covered the medical themes explored in the work.

The cataloger identifies several other plays in the library's collection that deal with doctors, patients, diseases, etc. Additional research shows that several thesauri include genre terms for fiction and moving image materials on medical themes. In addition, a search of the LC online catalog reveals usage there of the term "medical drama." Armed with this information the library decides to propose a new genre heading in LCSH.

SACO proposal: **Medical drama**

The proposed heading is coded "Not Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 that say headings for *general* literary forms and genres are not subdivided geographically.

Since the free-floating form subdivision **--Drama** can be used under topics, the cataloger includes several references for equivalent genre headings constructed in that form so that users searching under some common medical headings subdivided by **--Drama** are referred to the phrase heading.

008/06 Not Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Medical drama
- 450 \$a Diseases \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Doctor drama
- 450 \$a Health facilities \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Hospital drama
- 450 \$a Hospitals \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Medical personnel \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Patients \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Physicians \$v Drama
- 450 \$a Sick \$v Drama
- 550 \$w g \$a Drama
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Blessing, L. *Patient A*, 1993.
- 670 \$a Kearns, M. *T-cells & sympathy : monologues in the age of AIDS*, c1995.
- 670 \$a Mersand, J.E. *Three plays about doctors*, 1961.

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

- 670 \$a GSAFD, 2000 \$b (Medical drama (Films); Medical drama (Television programs; Medical novels)
- 670 \$a The moving image genre-form guide, via WWW, Nov. 12, 2002 \$b (Medical. Fictional work telling of the milieu of health practitioners, from doctors to nurses, their profession, and their patients ... The milieu may be portrayed under both emergency as well as day-to-day conditions, with patients struggling to overcome physical and sometimes mental challenges.)
- 670 \$a LC database, Nov. 12, 2002 \$b (medical drama)



Example F

Title of work being cataloged: *Romantic comedy in Hollywood from Lubitsch to Sturges*.

A work may be an instance of a form or genre, or it may be about that form or genre. LC subject headings may be established for either kind. In this example, we have a work about romantic comedy films, rather than an actual romantic comedy film itself. The existing heading possibilities in LCSH are **Comedy films** or **Screwball comedy films**. **Comedy films** is too broad. **Screwball comedy films** may be an appropriate heading, but further research is needed.

The phrase “romantic comedy” is a well known term used to describe films, and research in film reference sources authenticates this perception. While some sources equate romantic comedy and screwball comedy, others make a clear distinction between them, so the cataloger decides a new genre heading is appropriate to propose.

SACO proposal: **Romantic comedy films**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Romantic comedy films
- 450 \$a Hollywood romantic comedy films
- 450 \$a Romantic comedies (Motion pictures)
- 550 \$w g \$a Comedy films
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Harvey, J. *Romantic comedy in Hollywood from Lubitsch to Sturges*, 1998.
- 670 \$a Lopez, D. *Films by genre*, 1993 \$b (Romantic comedy. This is a blanket term that includes any comic film in which the protagonists, a man and a woman, engage in courtship, amorous dalliance and sexual games meant to seduce and entrap the member of the opposite sex; romantic comedies; the following types of comedy also qualify as romantic comedy: Marriage comedy, Screwball comedy, Sophisticated comedy)
- 670 \$a Konigsberg, I. *The complete film dictionary*, 1997 \$b (Romantic comedy. A film dealing with the relationship of a man and woman, who, after many trials and tribulations ... are finally united at the end of the film; a variation is the couple who start off united, are temporarily separated, but are reunited at the end of the film; trials and tribulations are treated in a comic manner. Romantic comedy has sometimes been thought of as synonymous with screwball comedy, but the second classification refers to a group of films too specific to be so all-inclusive. A number of romantic comedies have heroines less aggressive or actions less madcap so that they are distinguishable from the screwball variety.)

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

- 670 \$a Sennett, T. Lunatics and lovers : a tribute to the giddy and glittering era of the screen's "screwball" and romantic comedies, 1985.
- 670 \$a LC database, Jan. 29, 2004 \$b (the Hollywood romantic comedy)

Example G

Title of work being cataloged: *VI Music presents reggaeton hitmakers 2000/2005. Vol. 1.*

The item being cataloged is a sound recording of a genre of music called reggaeton. Reggaeton developed in Puerto Rico out of reggae and hip hop music. A cataloger could assign the existing headings **Reggae music** and **Rap (Music)** (the authorized heading for hip hop music) to this recording, but those headings are not at the appropriate level of specificity. Authority records for styles and genres of music are required per SCM H 250. Research shows that there is warrant for establishing a heading for reggaeton. This example also illustrates the usefulness of Internet resources for terminology that may be too new to have made it into standard reference sources. The sources found online confirm the genre's name as found on the recording, but also provide a variant form as well as the information needed to select the broader terms on the authority record.

SACO proposal: **Reggaetón**

The proposed heading is coded "May Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location. Reference sources indicate that reggaeton is popular in a variety of countries.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Reggaet(acute)on
- 450 \$a Reguet(acute)on
- 550 \$w g \$a Rap (Music) \$z Puerto Rico
- 550 \$w g \$a Reggae music \$z Puerto Rico
- 670 \$a VI Music presents reggaeton hitmakers 2000/2005. Vol. 1, p2005.
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, June 2, 2005 \$b (Reggaeton is a type of dance music that was developed in Puerto Rico; now also very popular in other Latin American countries; Reggaeton - also spelled Reggaet(acute)on and hispanicised as Reguet(acute)on - is a Spanish language genre of dancehall with a distinct hip hop influence that has been heard in Puerto Rico since the mid 1990's)
- 670 \$a Music of Puerto Rico WWW site, June 2, 2005 \$b (name derived from the reggae music of Jamaica which influenced reggaeton's dance beat; also heavily influenced by other Puerto Rican music genres and by urban hip-hop music craze in the United States)

Since all 5XXs on authority records must also have their own authority records, both of the broader terms on this proposal must be established headings. Hip hop music is a variant form on the authority record for **Rap (Music)**. While both **Rap (Music)** and **Reggae music** were already established, the headings subdivided geographically by Puerto Rico were not. A 5XX reference consisting of an established main heading with a free-floating or geographic subdivision is called a "backdoor heading." SACO does not

### *New Subject Proposal Examples*

require libraries to submit proposals for backdoor headings. If a backdoor heading is not already set up in LCSH, the library may submit a proposal to establish it, but if it does not, that authority record will be created by staff at LC. Authority records for backdoor headings generally consist solely of the 1XX field, without references or source citations. If a library chooses to submit a backdoor heading proposal via SACO, a 952 note can be added to explain the reason for the proposal, e.g.:

150 \$a Reggae music \$z Puerto Rico  
952 \$a Made for reference hierarchy

The 008/06 in the backdoor heading would be coded “No Decision” per instructions in SCM H 364 section 3.

Example H

Title of work being cataloged: *Rīan rūčhak khim dūai ton 'ēng*.

This publication provides instruction on how to play the khim, a Thai dulcimer, with music in Thai style notation. The cataloger needs a subject heading to bring out the instructional aspect of the work and a heading for the form of music. Authority records are required for headings for music of a single instrument (SCM H 250). In order to establish a form heading for this type of instrumental music, a heading for the type of instrument must first be established. The cataloger must do research to determine what the authorized term for the instrument will be. SCM H 1918 instructs catalogers that when establishing a heading for an instrument they must also establish a heading for music of the instrument, which authorizes the instrument to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance.

SACO proposals: **Khim** and **Khim music**

Musical instruments are generally established in the singular form per SCM H 285 and H 1918.

The proposed instrument heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Khim
- 450 \$a Kim (Dulcimer)
- 550 \$w g \$a Dulcimer
- 550 \$w g \$a Musical instruments \$z Cambodia
- 550 \$w g \$a Musical instruments \$z Thailand
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Niphan Thanarak. R(macron)ian r(macron)u(hacek)chak khim d(macron)uai ton(ayn)(macron)eng, 1997: \$b pp. 8-10 (khim; a wooden hammered dulcimer with 42 metal strings and two bridges; has fourteen courses of three strings)
- 670 \$a Dolmetsch online music dictionary, Aug. 2, 2006 \$b (Khim, see kim; Kim (Southern Thailand) a hammered dulcimer with three strings per course similar to the Chinese yang chin. Both have Arabic origins; Kim (Vietnam), see nguye(umlaut)at; Nguye(umlaut)at (Vietnam) also called the k(grave)im, a guitar-like instrument with a long neck, which emits muted sounds, having 2 strings made of silk braid).
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, Aug. 2, 2006 \$b (The khim (pronounced "kim," with a rising tone, in Thai) is a hammered dulcimer from Thailand and Cambodia. It is made of wood and trapezoidal in shape, with numerous brass strings. It is played with two flexible bamboo sticks and is used as both a solo and ensemble instrument. The instrument was introduced to Thailand and Cambodia from China, where a similar

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

- (though usually larger) instrument is called yangqin; the khim produces a significantly softer sound. Traditional khim have two bridges, though in the late 20th century some players began using larger instruments with more bridges.)
- 670 \$a Grove music online, Aug. 2, 2006 \$b (under Dulcimer nomenclature: The Mandarin Chinese term Yangqin ("foreign string instrument") is the commonest one in the orient, and it has also been borrowed in Indian Sanskrit. The term used in Mongolia is yoochin; in Korea yangg(breve)um; among the Central Asian Uighurs yenjing; in Thailand khim. Like European dulcimers, these usually have long bridges (chessmen only occasionally), vertical tuning-pins and an acute angle of about 60 degrees.)

The reference from the variant spelling is qualified because kim is also a guitar-like instrument in Vietnam and because the same term is found as a cross-reference to the heading **Nori**, the name for various species of edible seaweed in genus *Porphyra*.

SCM H 1918 requires that catalogers include in the heading for the music of the instrument a see also note (MARC field 360), where the authorized plural, if there is one, is shown, and a scope note (MARC field 680). The wording patterns for both of those notes are provided in the instruction sheet and illustrated in the proposal below. Please note that the Web proposal form does not have a specific box for see also notes. If a see also note is required, it should be keyed into the box for comments and a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team will move the information into the proper MARC field.

The proposed music genre heading is coded "May Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Khim music
- 360 \$i headings for forms and types of music that include "khim" or "khims" and headings with medium of performance that include "khim" or "khims"
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Niphan Thanarak. R(macron)ian r(macron)u(hacek)chak khim d(macron)uai ton(ayn)(macron)eng, 1997.
- 680 \$i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo khim, and compositions in several forms or types for solo khim.

Based on the SACO proposals shown above, the subject headings that were assigned for the work being cataloged included the following:

Khim \$v Methods \$v Self-instruction  
Khim music

Example I

Title of work being cataloged: *Music for two*.

This recording features Bela Fleck on banjo and Edgar Meyer on double bass. Headings for music for combinations of two instruments must be established per SCM H 250. Instructions on which order to put the two instruments in the heading are found in SCM H 1917.5. Both instruction sheets are cited instead of a pattern in local note field 952. This kind of heading is an example of one of the few times when additional authority research is not needed or required to justify the heading and its references, provided that headings for both instruments themselves are already established. In the 670 citation the specific instruments do not even have to be named.

SACO proposal: **Banjo and double bass music**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 \$a Banjo and double bass music  
450 \$a Double bass and banjo music  
670 \$a Work cat.: Fleck, B. *Music for two* [SR], p2004.  
952 \$a SCM H 250 1-b; H 1917.5 sec. 2

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example J

Title of work being cataloged: *Cootie catcher : your own personal fortune teller.*

The bibliographic description of this work includes a note that explains what this item actually is: Consists of a single sheet folded and refolded again so that the four exterior flaps, bearing text, may be opened at random to reveal one's fortune in the format called a cootie catcher. Package includes instructions for using the cootie catcher and directions for making your own cootie catcher.

In this case, the work is not about any subject. The existing heading **Fortune-telling** would be assigned to works about that topic. The heading **Fortune-tellers** is for the persons who tell fortunes. What is needed instead is a form heading to describe what this item is. The term "cootie catcher" may be the appropriate name for this, but additional research is needed to verify this or to find a more appropriate term. Authority research shows that these things are sometimes called "fortune tellers," but the term in common usage is indeed "cootie catcher." "Fortune tellers" can be given as a reference, but it needs to be qualified to distinguish it from the persons covered in the other heading. This proposal illustrates the usefulness of searching the Internet when standard reference sources do not provide any information.

SACO proposal: **Cootie catchers**

The proposed heading is coded "May Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for types of objects and equipment.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Cootie catchers
- 450 \$a Catchers, Cootie
- 450 \$a Fortune tellers (Paper work)
- 450 \$a Origami cootie catchers
- 550 \$w g \$a Paper work
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Elliott , S.T. Cootie catcher : your own personal fortune teller, c1999.
- 670 \$a Google search, July 16, 2003 \$b (cootie catcher; origami cootie catcher)
- 670 \$a eCrush website, July 16, 2003: \$b fortunes/cootie catcher (an origami-style device constructed of a single sheet of paper and used on playgrounds the world over to tell a fortune)
- 670 \$a LC database, July 16, 2003 \$b (ti: The cootie catcher book; subtitle on cover: Tear-‘em-out, fold-‘em-up, fortune tellers; keywords: Cootie catchers, Fortune tellers)
- 675 \$a OED; \$a Britannica online; \$a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Engl. lang., c2000; \$a Web. 3



*New Subject Proposal Examples*

When this heading was approved, the library assigned two headings on the record for the item, both of which indicate that it was an example of the form rather than about it:

650 \_0 \$a Cootie catchers \$v Specimens.

655 \_0 \$a Cootie catchers.

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### **Headings based on an existing pattern**

#### Example K

Title of work being cataloged: *The demonstrative "this" as an indefinite article in spoken English.*

Many academic libraries catalog their institution's theses and dissertations, which are often on arcane topics or newly emerging disciplines. Libraries also sometimes purchase reproductions of other institutions' dissertations. The principle of specificity applies as well to these unpublished materials as it does to more mainstream library materials. The thesis in this example is in the discipline of linguistics and focuses on the word "this." While LCSH terms exist to bring out the concepts of English-language articles (**English language--Article**) and the concept of spoken English (**English language--Spoken English**), the principal concept needed is for the word "this." The cataloger finds that LCSH does have headings for specific words in various languages, for example: **Also (The English word)**; **Pourquoi (The French word)**; **Ne (The Russian word)**. Thus a clear pattern exists on which to base a proposal for a heading for the word "this."

This type of proposal illustrates one of the few cases where additional authority research is usually not necessary to justify the heading. It is sufficient here just to cite an existing heading as the pattern on which the new proposal is based. The pattern also makes clear what the appropriate broader term(s) should be if the particular heading selected as a pattern is coded in fixed field 008/29 as having evaluated references (see p. 97).

SACO proposal: **This (The English word)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364 section 3, the 008/06 in the proposed heading is coded "No Decision" because the heading does not fall into any of the types of headings covered in sections 1 (headings authorized for geographic subdivision) or 2 (headings not authorized for geographic subdivision).

008/06 No Decision

150 \$a This (The English word)  
550 \$w g \$a English language \$x Etymology  
670 \$a Work cat.: Wright, S. The demonstrative "this" as an indefinite article in spoken English, 1989.  
952 \$a LC pattern: There (The English word)

Example L

Title of work being cataloged: *La novela histórica chilena dentro del marco de la novelística chilena, 1843-1879.*

This is about the Chilean historical novel in the 19th century. No heading for this specific genre exists, but there are numerous other existing headings that supply the appropriate pattern to follow, for example, **Historical fiction, American; Historical fiction, Brazilian; Historical fiction, Mexican**. Relevant sections in the SCM include H 306, H 320, and H 1790.

SACO proposal: **Historical fiction, Chilean**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings for forms or genres with national adjectival qualifiers.

A classification proposal was also made to add historical fiction to the literature table P-PZ20 so that a number can be added to the subject heading for collections of historical fiction (see second 053 in proposal below and classification proposal example C). It is important to note that such a classification proposal, while beneficial, is extra work that was not actually necessary, because the specific work being cataloged is a work of history and criticism and will class in an already existing number, PQ8007.H5. It would have been acceptable just to include the first 053 in the proposal below without proposing an additional number under collections.

Because diacritics and other special characters cannot be keyed into email in many systems or into the Web-based proposal form, the name of the diacritic or character should be placed in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies, as shown in the 670 source citation below. When the data keyed into the Web proposal form are moved into the LC authorities system, the correct diacritic or special character will automatically be inserted. Please note that this practice of putting the diacritic *in front* of the letter to which it applies differs from some other systems, such as OCLC Connexion, in which the diacritic is input *after* the appropriate letter.

008/06 May Subd Geog

053 0 \$a PQ8007.H5 \$c History  
053 0 \$a PQ8076.5.H \$c Collections  
150 \$a Historical fiction, Chilean  
450 \$a Chilean historical fiction  
550 \$w g \$a Chilean fiction  
670 \$a Work cat.: L(uumlaut)ofquist, E. La novela hist(acute)orica chilena dentro del marco de la novel(acute)istica chilena, 1843-1879, 1995.  
952 \$a LC pattern: Historical fiction, American; Biographical fiction, Chilean  
952 \$a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Oct. 14, 1999

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### **Headings for geographic places**

#### Example M

Title of work being cataloged: *The last forests of Bangladesh.*

The work focuses on the last remaining major forest area in Bangladesh, which it calls Modhupur Forest or Modhupur Garh Forest.

SCM instruction sheet H 690 provides guidance on formulating geographic names and H 810 contains instructions on how such names should be qualified. If available, the form of name approved by the U.S. Board on Geographic Names (BGN) should be obtained and is generally preferred over other forms. In the case of foreign geographic names the *GEOnet Names Server* (GNS) is the appropriate database to query for the BGN form of name. Additional authority research in standard geographical dictionaries and gazetteers can help to evaluate the form of name used by BGN and/or provide variants to use as cross-references.

In this case, the form of name found in *GEOnet* and in the *Columbia Gazetteer of the World*, Madhupur Jungle, is different from the forms found in the work being cataloged. The form found in the authoritative reference sources is selected as the heading. The *Columbia Gazetteer* also provides a variant form not found in either the work cat. or *GEOnet*.

SACO proposal: **Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

Because diacritics and other special characters cannot be keyed into email in many systems or into the Web-based proposal form, the name of the diacritic or character should be placed in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies. The Web form instructs catalogers to spell out or abbreviate the words “degrees,” “minutes,” and “seconds” when citing coordinates in a 670 field, as shown in the example below.

The form in which the heading is used as a geographic subdivision is determined according to the guidelines in SCM H 830. SCM H 836 provides instructions on how to correctly code this in subject authority records in field 781.

008/06 No Decision

151 \$a Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)  
451 \$a Garh Gazali (Bangladesh)  
451 \$a Modhupur Forest (Bangladesh)  
451 \$a Modhupur Garh Forest (Bangladesh)  
550 \$w g \$a Forests and forestry \$z Bangladesh

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: G(macron)aina, P. The last forests of Bangladesh, 1998: \$b p. v (Modhupur Forest) p. 67 (Modhupur Garh Forest)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, Dec. 15, 1999: \$b Bangladesh (Madhupur Jungle, FRST, 24deg.43min.00sec.N, 90deg.04min.00sec.E)
- 670 \$a Columbia gaz. \$b (Madhupur Jungle, c.420 sq mi/1,088 sq km, densely wooded area, S Mymensingh and N Dacca dists., East Bengal, Bangladesh; c.45 mi/8 km long, 6 mi/9.7 km-16 mi/26 km wide. Also called Garh Gazali)
- 781 \_0 \$z Bangladesh \$z Madhupur Jungle

Since all 5XXs on authority records must also have their own authority records, the broader term on this proposal, **Forests and forestry--Bangladesh**, must also be an established heading. In a case like this, the 5XX is a "backdoor heading" consisting of an established main heading with a free-floating geographic subdivision. SACO does not require libraries to submit proposals for backdoor headings. If **Forests and forestry--Bangladesh** is not already set up in LCSH, the library can submit a separate proposal to establish it, but if it does not, the authority record for the backdoor heading will be created by staff at LC. Authority records for backdoor headings generally consist solely of the 1XX field, without references or source citations. If submitting a backdoor heading proposal via SACO, a 952 note can be added to explain the reason for the proposal:

- 150 \$a Forests and forestry \$z Bangladesh
- 952 \$a Made for reference hierarchy

The 008/06 in the backdoor heading would be coded "No Decision" per instructions in SCM H 364 section 3.

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example N

Title of work being cataloged: *Food and distribution of Arctic char in Lake Aleknagik, Alaska, during the summer of 1962.*

Since the work has as its geographic focus one specific lake, the cataloger will need to use a geographic subdivision for that lake under the main topical heading (**Arctic char**). Since the lake is not yet established, the cataloger must follow the instructions in SCM H 690 to determine the authorized form for this geographic feature. Until the form of the geographic heading itself has been determined, the cataloger cannot know what the correct form is when used as a geographic subdivision. Since this feature is in the U.S. the *Geographic Names Information System* (GNIS) must be searched to obtain the BGN approved form of name. SCM H 690 describes when additional authority research may be required.

In this particular case, the cataloger finds the name “Lake Aleknagik” in GNIS. SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to rearrange the elements of the name for entities in English-speaking countries so that the distinctive portion of the name occurs in the initial position. Thus, the heading will be established in inverted form. The qualifier (Alaska) is added to the heading per SCM H 810. A reference is made from the name in direct order and from the direct and inverted forms of the variant name “Lake Alaknagik” that was found in GNIS.

The form in which the heading is used as a geographic subdivision is determined according to the guidelines in SCM H 830 and included in field 781 per SCM H 836.

SACO proposal: **Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to add up to three broader term fields (550) with headings for the type of feature subdivided by the place in which the feature is located. Thus a BT for **Lakes--Alaska** is included in the proposal. Since that heading-geographic subdivision combination has already been established, no backdoor heading needs to be created. While doing research on the name, the cataloger also discovered that the lake is part of a group of lakes known as the Wood River Lakes. If an individual feature belongs to a named group, SCM H 690 directs catalogers to also include a 551 broader heading for the named group, provided that a heading for it already exists. Since **Wood River Lakes (Alaska)** is already established, it is added as a broader term. If the heading for a broader group has not yet been established, catalogers are not required to establish it, and no 551 BT is made.

When only one set of geographic coordinates is found in GNIS or *GEOnet* for a place, LC practice is to record them in a 670 citation. If a database provides more than one set

of coordinates for a place, LC practice is to omit them all from the 670 field. The GNIS record for Lake Aleknagik appears below:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report**

---

Feature ID: **1398092**  
 Name: **Lake Aleknagik**  
 Class: **Lake**  
 Citation: **Represents a feature name collected during Phase I GNIS data compilation (1976-1981), primarily from existing U.S. Geological Survey 1:24,000-scale topographic maps; various edition dates.**  
 Entry Date: **31-Mar-1981**  
 Elevation(ft/m): **7/2**

**Variant Names**

---

**Variant Name**  
 Lake Alaknagik Citation

**Counties**

---

Sequence	County	Code	State	Code	Country
1	Dillingham (CA)	070	Alaska	02	US

**Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)**

---

Sequence	Latitude(DEC)	Longitude(DEC)	Latitude(DMS)	Longitude(DMS)	Map Name
1	59.3394444	-158.8019444	592022N	1584807W	Dillingham B-8 SE
2	59.2769444	-158.6141667	591637N	1583651W	Dillingham B-7 SW
3	59.4458333	-159.0297222	592645N	1590147W	Goodnews Bay B-1 NE

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Aleknagik, Lake (Alaska)
- 451 \$a Alaknagik, Lake (Alaska)
- 451 \$a Lake Alaknagik (Alaska)
- 451 \$a Lake Aleknagik (Alaska)
- 550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Alaska
- 551 \$w g \$a Wood River Lakes (Alaska)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Nelson, M.O. Food and distribution of Arctic char in Lake Aleknagik, Alaska, during the summer of 1962, 1966.
- 670 \$a Rogers, D.E. Limnology in the Wood River Lakes, 1998: \$b p. 1 (Lake Aleknagik)
- 670 \$a GNIS, Apr. 15, 2006 \$b (Lake Aleknagik, lake, Alaska, Dillingham (CA), variant: Lake Alaknagik)
- 781 \_0 \$z Alaska \$z Aleknagik, Lake

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example O: Government-designated parks, reserves, forests, monuments, etc.

Title of work being cataloged: *Auyuittuq National Park Reserve*.

In 2005, the Cataloging Policy and Support Office at LC announced the implementation of a new practice regarding the establishment of headings for government-designated parks, forests, reserves, monuments, seashores, recreation areas, etc. The new policy calls for the creation of two separate headings for government-designated parks, forests, etc., one designating the corporate, administrative entity (established as a name heading tagged 110, with the qualifier (**Agency**), plus a jurisdictional qualifier if required by the descriptive cataloging rules) in the LC/NACO Authority File, and one designating the physical, geographic entity (established as a subject heading tagged 151, usually with a geographic qualifier) in the LC/SACO Authority File. The announcement of this policy (“Implementation of New Practice for Government-Designated Parks, Forests, etc.”) is available from the General, Descriptive Cataloging page of the Cataloging and Acquisitions website (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpsso/parks2.html>). Documentation of the policy is included in the SCM instruction sheet on parks, reserves, national monuments, etc. (H 1925) and in LCRI 24.1A.

When cataloging a work on or emanating from a government-designated park, forest, etc., the cataloger must determine whether he or she needs a main or added entry or subject heading for the corporate body (in which case a name heading tagged 110, 610, or 710 is used) or whether he or she needs a subject heading or subject subdivision for the geographic place (in which case a heading tagged 651 or a topical or form/genre heading subdivided geographically is used).

An example of the two-heading policy can be seen in the authority records for **Everglades National Park (Agency : U.S.)** and **Everglades National Park (Fla.)**. The former was established because it was needed as the main entry for the Park’s annual report. The latter was established for a biological report on the status of the osprey (a bird of prey) in the park, for which it was needed as a geographic subdivision.

010 \$a n 2005055410  
110 2\_ \$a Everglades National Park (Agency : U.S.)  
410 1\_ \$a United States. \$b National Park Service. \$b Everglades National Park  
410 2\_ \$a ENP  
670 \$a Everglades National Park ... annual report, 1998: \$b cover (Everglades National Park, Public Affairs Office)  
670 \$a National Park Service Everglades National Park home page, 27 July 2005 \$b (Spanning the southern tip of the Florida peninsula and most of Florida Bay, Everglades National Park is the only subtropical preserve in North America)  
670 \$a South Florida Natural Resources Center home page, Aug. 9, 2005 \$b (Everglades National Park (ENP))  
  
010 \$a sh 91004678  
151 \$a Everglades National Park (Fla.)



- 550 \$w g \$a National parks and reserves \$z Florida  
670 \$a Work cat.: Bass, O.L. Status of the osprey in Everglades National Park, 1982.  
670 \$a National parks, 1989: \$b index, p. 35 (Everglades National Park; Homestead, FL.)  
781 \_0 \$z Florida \$z Everglades National Park

The work being cataloged for this example, *Auyuittuq National Park Reserve*, is a children's book describing the park's features, history, and unique facts. In this case, a geographic subject heading is needed, not an administrative, corporate name heading. The park is located in the Canadian territory of Nunavut and authority research must be done to determine the heading and any variants. For Canadian names, *GEOnet* can be searched if available, but there is also an official Canadian government database for geographic names that is particularly useful to use as a reference source. However, just relying on that database would not have informed the cataloger that after the work being cataloged was published, the park changed its name to Auyuittuq National Park. Separate geographic subject authorities are not created for earlier/later names, which differs from the practice for geographic name authorities. For subject authorities, the heading is always established under the most recent form of name of the geographic place, with simple see references from any variant forms, including earlier names.

SACO proposal: **Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded "No Decision."

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Auyuittuq National Park (Nunavut)  
451 \$a Auyuittuq National Park Reserve (Nunavut)  
451 \$a Parc national Auyuittuq (Nunavut)  
550 \$w g \$a National parks and reserves \$z Nunavut  
670 \$a Work cat.: McDermott, B. Auyuittuq National Park Reserve, c1999.  
670 \$a E-mail from Tim Sookocheff, Director, Park Establishment Branch, Parks Canada, Mar. 8, 2000 \$b (Designation recently officially changed from "park reserve" to "park", now Auyuittuq National Park in English; Parc national Auyuittuq in French)  
670 \$a Parks Canada WWW site, Mar. 27, 2000 \$b (Auyuittuq National Park in English; Parc national Auyuittuq in French)  
670 \$a Querying Canadian geographical names WWW site, Mar. 8, 2000 \$b (Auyuittuq National Park Reserve; updated information not yet entered in the database)  
781 \_0 \$z Nunavut \$z Auyuittuq National Park

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example P: Geographic feature within a city

Title of work being cataloged: *Master plan, Fort Worden State Park.*

At first, this heading seems straightforward: a subject heading for the physical, geographic entity is needed, not a name heading for the corporate, administrative entity (see example O above for further details on LC's two-heading policy for government-designated parks, forests, etc.). The name of this park is not found in GNIS, meaning that additional authority research is required. That research reveals that this state park is located within the city limits of Port Townsend, Washington. SCM H 810 instructs catalogers to qualify archaeological sites, parks and gardens, streets and roads, and other man-made geographic structures, by the name of the city. Natural features within cities are qualified by the name of the larger jurisdiction unless a conflict must be resolved. SCM H 830 states that topical subject headings may not be divided geographically to a level lower than that of a city, town, etc. Thus geographic places that are qualified by the name of a city may not be used as geographic subdivisions. Instead of a 781 field showing the form to use as a geographic subdivision, a 667 field must be included containing the text "This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision" (SCM H 836).

SACO proposal: **Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded "No Decision."

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Fort Worden State Park (Port Townsend, Wash.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Parks \$z Washington (State)
- 667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: John Graham and Company. Master plan, Fort Worden State Park, 1972.
- 670 \$a Washington State Parks and Recreation Commission WWW home page, Nov. 30, 1999 \$b (Fort Worden State Park; location: within the city limits of Port Townsend, Jefferson County; 433.56 acres with 11,020 feet of saltwater shoreline on Admiralty Inlet and the Strait of Juan de Fuca)
- 670 \$a Sinotte, B. Oregon & Washington, c1996: \$b p. 148-149 (Fort Worden State Park; near Port Townsend on Point Wilson; became state park in 1972)
- 670 \$a DeHaan, V. State parks of the West, c1992: \$b p. 197 (Fort Worden State Park; one mile north of Port Townsend)
- 675 \$a GNIS, Nov. 30, 1999; \$a Washington place names database, via WWW, Nov. 30, 1999

Example Q: Entities in two or more jurisdictions

1) Title of work being cataloged: *The ecology of Volcán Chiles : high-altitude ecosystems on the Ecuador-Colombia border.*

The work focuses on a volcano known in Spanish as Volcán Chiles. As the subtitle indicates, and additional authority research confirms, this volcano is located in two countries: Ecuador and Colombia.

Per SCM H 690, for names of places outside of the U.S. the *GEOnet Names Server* should be consulted to obtain the BGN-approved form of the name. This form is generally preferred, but additional authority research is usually also required to identify name conflicts, variant forms, and other pertinent information. If BGN provides an English form of the name, that form is preferred over others. If no English form is found, H 690 directs catalogers to construct one by translating a generic term in the name into English. If the generic term appears first in the name, the elements are rearranged to put the distinctive portion of the name in the initial position. There are some instances in which the vernacular form of the name is used instead of an English form. H 690 should be consulted for these special cases.

The screen shot below illustrates the results of a *GEOnet* search for places in Colombia with the name “Chiles”:

**Geonames Search Results**

REGION	DESIG.	LATITUDE	LONGITUDE	AREA	UTM	JOG NO.	UFI	UNI	PPL CLASS	MOD. DATE
BGN Standard		<b>Chiles</b>								
		Name Country Code: EC								
(1)	VLC	00° 48' 00" N	077° 57' 00" W	CO00	SF78	NA18-13	-580568	-819493		1994-05-20
BGN Standard		<b>Chiles, Volcán</b> (UNI= -819492)								
		Name Country Code: CO								
Variant		<b>Volcán</b> (UNI= -848114)								
BGN Standard		<b>Chiles, Río</b>								
(1)	STM	00° 49' 00" N	077° 50' 00" W	CO20	SF89	NA18-13	-580567	-819491		1993-12-08
BGN Standard		<b>Chiles</b>								
(1)	PPL	00° 48' 45" N	077° 50' 48" W	CO20	SF88	NA18-13	-580566	-819489		2001-01-04

Authority research in GEOnet and other reference sources identifies two Spanish forms of name for this volcano, Volcán Chiles and Nevado de Chiles. The BGN-approved form is Volcán Chiles for Colombia and just Chiles for Ecuador. Since the generic term Volcán appears first in the the name, it is translated into English and rearranged to put

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

Chiles in the initial position. The heading for this entity will therefore be established in LCSH as: **Chiles Volcano**. References are made from vernacular forms.

According to SCM H 810, when a geographic entity being established as a subject is located in two jurisdictions, include in the qualifier the names of both jurisdictions. Generally, give the jurisdictions in alphabetical order, but if the entity is located primarily in one of them, put that jurisdiction first. SCM H 800 has additional instructions for qualification of rivers in two jurisdictions.

In this case, there is no information that indicates that the volcano lies predominantly in one country. Therefore, the names of the two jurisdictions are given in alphabetical order.

SACO proposal: **Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

SCM H 690 instructs catalogers to include up to three 550 (broader term) fields containing the generic heading for the type of feature, structure, etc., subdivided by country, etc. Volcanoes are also often thought of as mountains, and LC practice is to give references from both of these types of features, each subdivided by jurisdiction. Since in this case the features are in two countries, the BT references are doubled, one for each country. SCM H 690 also directs catalogers to give a 551 BT reference for a named group to which an individual feature belongs, if appropriate. Since authority research indicates that Chiles Volcano is a peak in the Andes Mountains, a broader term reference from Andes is also made.

Per SCM H 830 and H 836, the correct form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is determined and recorded in field 781. Geographic regions and features that lie in two or more countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain are subdivided directly rather than indirectly.

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)
- 451 \$a Nevado de Chiles (Colombia and Ecuador)
- 451 \$a Volc(acute)an Chiles (Colombia and Ecuador)
- 551 \$w g \$a Andes
- 550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Colombia
- 550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Ecuador
- 550 \$w g \$a Volcanoes \$z Colombia
- 550 \$w g \$a Volcanoes \$z Ecuador
- 670 \$a Work cat.: The ecology of Volc(acute)an Chiles : high-altitude ecosystems on the Ecuador-Colombia border, 2001.

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

- 670 \$a Lippincott \$b (Chiles, Nevado de; Andean peak of 15,577 ft on Ecuador-Colombia border; extinct volcano)
- 670 \$a Ad(grave)es, H. The rough guide to Ecuador, 2000: \$b p. 141 (Volc(acute)an Chiles, 4723m, straddles the Colombian border)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, 8 May 2002 \$b (Chiles; EC; Chiles, Volc(acute)an; CO; volcano, 00deg.48min.00sec.N 077deg.57min.00sec.W; variant: Volc(acute)an)
- 781 \_0 \$z Chiles Volcano (Colombia and Ecuador)

If any of the broader term headings **Mountains--Colombia**, **Mountains--Ecuador**, **Volcanoes--Colombia**, and **Volcanoes--Ecuador** were not already established, they could be submitted separately, but this is not required of SACO participants. LC staff will create authority records for backdoor headings like these as part of the processing of SACO proposals. In this case, all four backdoor headings were already established and no further action was needed.

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

2) Title of work being cataloged: *Album starých pohlednic Lužických hor a Ještědu = Album alter Ansichtskarten vom Lausitzer-, Zittauer- und Jeschkengebirge.*

This book in Czech and German reproduces old postcards illustrating places in three mountain ranges of central Europe, and includes descriptive information about the places depicted on the postcards. The book calls one of these ranges “Lužické hory” in Czech and “Lausitzergebirge” or “Lausitzer Gebirge” in German.

Searching the *GEOnet Names Server* for the BGN-approved form of name shows that the approved name in Germany is Lausitzer Gebirge and in the Czech Republic, Lužické Hory. *GEOnet* does not provide an English form. Further authority research does identify an English name, Lusatian Mountains, that they are located in the Czech Republic, Germany, and Poland, and that they are part of the Sudeten Mountains. It also identifies the Polish name for the mountains, Góry Lużyckie. According to SCM H 690, for geographic names in non-English-speaking countries, reference sources may justify the choice of the conventional English form when BGN has supplied the name only in the vernacular form. Thus for this heading, the English form, Lusatian Mountains, can be chosen over the German, Czech, or Polish forms. References are made from the vernacular forms.

Once the form of the heading has been decided, the qualifier must then be considered. For entities in more than two jurisdictions, SCM H 810 says to use no qualifier unless it is necessary to distinguish between two entities by the same name or to clarify an ambiguous term. In this case, there is no conflict or ambiguity, so the heading gets no qualifier.

SACO proposal: **Lusatian Mountains**

The 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision” per instructions in SCM H 364.

For broader terms, up to three 550 fields containing the generic heading for the type of feature subdivided by country (or first order political division of the United States, Canada, and Great Britain) can be included per SCM H 690. For features in more than three countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain, catalogers are directed to use an appropriate broader geographic name as the subdivision. In this case, the feature type heading **Mountains** will be recorded in three 550 BT fields, each subdivided by one of the countries in which the Lusatian Mountains are located.

SCM H 690 also directs catalogers to give a 551 BT reference for a named group to which an individual feature belongs, if appropriate. Since authority research indicates that the Lusatian Mountains are part of the Sudeten, this additional BT will be included.

Per SCM H 830 and H 836, the correct form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is determined and recorded in field 781. Geographic regions and features

that lie in two or more countries or first order political divisions of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain are subdivided directly rather than indirectly.

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Lusatian Mountains
- 451 \$a G(acute)ory Lu(acute)zyckie
- 451 \$a Lausitzer Gebirge
- 451 \$a Lausitzergebirge
- 451 \$a Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e hory
- 451 \$a Vrchovina Lu(hacek)zick(acute)a
- 550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Czech Republic
- 550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Germany
- 550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Poland
- 551 \$w g \$a Sudeten
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Karpa(hacek)s, R. Album star(acute)ych pohlednic Lu(hacek)zick(acute)ych hor a Je(hacek)st(hacek)edu, 2000: \$b t.p. (Lausitzergebirge)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, May 16, 2006 \$b (Lausitzer Gebirge, MTS, Germany, 50deg.45min.N, 014deg.50min.E; Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e Hory, Czech Republic; variant: Lu(hacek)zick(acute)a, Vrchovina)
- 670 \$a Columbia gazetteer of the world, c1998 \$b (Lusatian Mountains, Czech Lu(hacek)zick(acute)e hory, Ger. Lausitzer Gebirge, Pol. G(acute)ory Lu(acute)zyckie, westernmost range of the Sudetes, in Upper Lusatia, along Czech borders with Germany and Poland)
- 670 \$a Getty thesaurus of geog. names online, May 16, 2006 \$b (Lusatian Mountains (mountains), Severocesky Kraj (region), Czech Republic. Luzick(acute)e hory (Czech), Lausitzer Gebirge (German). The Lusatian Mountains are located in extreme northern Bohemia in the Czech Republic, part of the Sudeten Mountains. The chain stretches from the Elbe river in the west to the Jested ridge in the east, with branches extending into Germany and Poland.)
- 675 \$a Merriam-Web. geog. dict., c1997
- 781 \_0 \$z Lusatian Mountains

Since the broader terms **Mountains--Czech Republic**, **Mountains--Germany**, and **Mountains--Poland** are already established, no backdoor headings need to be created as part of this proposal.

## New Subject Proposal Examples

### Example R: Conflicts between geographic entities with same name

The examples below illustrate the principle that catalogers must identify conflicts between geographic entities with the same name, and they show how to resolve such conflicts.

1) Title of work being cataloged: *Home range and movement of nutria (Myocastor coypus) at Spring Lake in central Texas, with anecdotal comments on the American beaver (Castor canadensis) of the same area.*

The geographic focus of this work is a lake in Texas named Spring Lake. The lake will be used as a geographic subdivision under the topical headings for the two animals discussed in this work. In order to assign the correct form of geographic subdivision, the heading for the lake must first be determined. SCM H 690 provides instructions on determining headings for geographic features. For a feature in the U.S., the cataloger must consult the *Geographic Names Information System (GNIS)* to ascertain the BGN approved form of name.

A search for Spring Lake in Texas in GNIS shows that there is more than one body of water with that name in the state:

#### Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results

**Click the feature name for details**

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map ▲	Elev(ft)	BGN	Entry Date
Spring Lake	1369024	Lake	Lamb	TX	341352N	1023001W	Earth	3697	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake	1369026	Reservoir	McLennan	TX	313812N	0970632W	Elm Mott	459	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake Dam	1860087	Dam	Walker	TX	304019N	0953337W	Huntsville	361	-	11-APR-2000
Spring Lake	1860088	Reservoir	Walker	TX	304019N	0953337W	Huntsville	361	-	11-APR-2000
Spring Lake	1369023	Lake	Leon	TX	313549N	0954344W	Indian Lake	197	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake	1347744	Lake	Dallas	TX	324719N	0965623W	Irving	420	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Park Lake	1369031	Reservoir	Anderson	TX	314546N	0953632W	Northeast Palestine	397	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Creek Country Club Lake Dam	1860695	Dam	Houston	TX	312207N	0953025W	Porter Springs	299	-	11-APR-2000
Spring Creek Country Club Lake	1860696	Reservoir	Houston	TX	312207N	0953025W	Porter Springs	299	-	11-APR-2000
Spring Lake	1347745	Reservoir	Hays	TX	295326N	0975602W	San Marcos North	574	-	30-NOV-1979
Schwander Springs	1998511	Spring	Kinney	TX	293331N	1001531W	Silver Lake	1680	-	17-SEP-2003
Mitchell Lake Spring	1998604	Spring	Bexar	TX	291631N	0982931W	Southton	518	-	17-SEP-2003
Spring Lake	1890016	Reservoir	Anderson	TX	314731N	0955145W	Tennessee Colony	226	-	27-JUL-2001
Spring Lake Park	1369027	Park	Bowie	TX	332750N	0940330W	Texarkana	367	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake Park School	1369028	School	Bowie	TX	332735N	0940307W	Texarkana	344	-	30-NOV-1979

row(s) 16 - 30 of 38



**Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results**

**Click the feature name for details**

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map ▲	Elev(ft)	BGN	Entry Date
Spring Lake Park Kindergarten Center	2003518	School	Bowie	TX	332733N	0940312W	Texarkana	341	-	03-OCT-2003
Spring Lake Baptist Church	2016780	Church	Bowie	TX	332737N	0940258W	Texarkana	358	-	03-DEC-2003
Phantom Lake Spring	1365133	Spring	Jeff Davis	TX	305606N	1035059W	Toyahvale	3494	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake	1347746	Reservoir	Smith	TX	322547N	0951801W	Tyler North	440	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake Dam	1854759	Dam	Smith	TX	322549N	0951801W	Tyler North	427	-	06-APR-2000
Spring Lake Springs	2012920	Spring	Smith	TX	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	-	-	22-OCT-2003
Spring Lake	1369025	Reservoir	Montgomery	TX	302419N	0952256W	Willis	223	-	30-NOV-1979
Spring Lake Dam	1854478	Dam	Montgomery	TX	302419N	0952255W	Willis	223	-	06-APR-2000

row(s) 31 - 38 of 38

The work being cataloged indicates that the Spring Lake in question is located in Hays County. GNIS does have a listing for this particular body of water:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report**

Feature ID: **1347745**

Name: **Spring Lake**

Class: **Reservoir**

Citation: **Collected during Phase I data compilation (1976-1981), primarily from U.S. Geological Survey 1:24,000-scale topographic maps (or 1:25K, Puerto Rico 1:20K), various edition dates, and from U.S. Board on Geographic Names files.**

Entry Date: **30-Nov-1979**

Elevation(ft/m): **574/175**

**Counties**

**Sequence County Code State Code Country**

1 Hays 209 Texas 48 US

**Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)**

**Sequence Latitude(DEC) Longitude(DEC) Latitude(DMS) Longitude(DMS) Map Name**

1 29.8904969 -97.9338940 295326N 0975602W San Marcos North

SCM H 810 instructs catalogers that if there are two or more entities with the same name in the same jurisdiction, to formulate a distinctive qualifier according to one of two methods:

a) If the entities in question are of the same type (e.g., they are all lakes), add to the qualifier the name of the next smaller jurisdiction (county, department, province, etc.).

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

b) If the entities in question are of different types (e.g., a populated place and a lake), add to the qualifier a generic term, in English, designating the type of entity. Separate this term from the geographic term within the qualifier by a space, a colon, and another space.

Since all of the Spring Lakes listed for Texas in GNIS are lakes or reservoirs, method a) is used to create a qualifier that will differentiate the Spring Lake in question from all of the others in Texas. Once the heading for the lake has been determined, the cataloger can then determine the correct form to use for geographic subdivision according to the guidelines in SCM H 830. This form is included in field 781 per SCM H 836.

SACO proposal: **Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

The broader term(s) included in subject authority records for geographic features are headings for the type of feature subdivided by the place in which the feature is located (SCM H 690). For reservoirs that have “Lake” in their name, LC typically adds both **Lakes** and **Reservoirs** as broader term references. Although the qualifier in the heading includes a county, BTs are subdivided only through the country or through the first-order political division for the U.S. (states), Canada (provinces and territories), and Great Britain (constituent countries).

151 \$a Spring Lake (Hays County, Tex.)  
550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Texas  
550 \$w g \$a Reservoirs \$z Texas  
670 \$a Work cat.: Denena, M.M. Home range and movement of nutria (*Myocastor coypus*) at Spring Lake in central Texas ... 2003: \$b p. 2 (Spring Lake is located within the city limits of San Marcos, Hays County, Texas; approx. 8 ha reservoir that is fed by an estimated 200 springs arising from the Edwards Aquifer; the lake is dammed 460 meters downstream from the headwaters)  
670 \$a GNIS, Dec. 22, 2003 \$b (Spring Lake, reservoir, Texas, Hays Co., 29deg.53min.25sec.N 097deg.56min.01sec.W; other lakes with same name in other Texas counties)  
781 \_0 \$z Texas \$z Spring Lake (Hays County)

2) Title of work being cataloged: *Bluewater/Wabana Lakes*.

The work being cataloged is a map showing two lakes in Minnesota. Research in GNIS shows that there is only one Bluewater Lake in Minnesota.:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results**

---

**Click the feature name for details**

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map ▲	Elev(ft)	BGN	Entry Date
Bluewater Lake	655460	Lake	Itasca	MN	472511N	0933313W	Wabana Lake	1319	1941	11-JAN-1980

1 - 1

However, GNIS lists Blue Lake as a variant name for this lake:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Detail Report**

---

Feature ID: **655460**

Name: **Bluewater Lake**

Class: **Lake**

Citation: **Collected during Phase I data compilation (1976-1981), primarily from U.S. Geological Survey 1:24,000-scale topographic maps (or 1:25K, Puerto Rico 1:20K), various edition dates, and from U.S. Board on Geographic Names files.**

Entry Date: **11-Jan-1980**

Elevation(ft/m): **1319/402**

**Variant Names**

---

**Variant Name**

Blue Lake      Citation

**Board on Geographic Names Decisions**

---

Feature Name	Decision Year	Authority	Decision Type
Bluewater Lake	1941	Board Decision	Official

**Counties**

---

Sequence	County	Code	State	Code	Country
1	Itasca	061	Minnesota	27	US

**Coordinates (One point per USGS topographic map containing the feature, NAD83)**

---

Sequence	Latitude(DEC)	Longitude(DEC)	Latitude(DMS)	Longitude(DMS)	Map Name
1	47.4196642	-93.5535378	472511N	0933313W	Wabana Lake

## New Subject Proposal Examples

Catalogers must search for conflicts for both authorized names *and* variants. A search for Blue Lake in GNIS reveals that there are other lakes in Minnesota named Blue Lake:

### Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results

Click the feature name for details

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map ▼	Elev(ft)	BGN	Entry Date
Blue Bill Lake	655444	Lake	Cass	MN	465937N	0942743W	Webb Lake	1362	-	11-JAN-1980
Bluewater Lake	655460	Lake	Itasca	MN	472511N	0933313W	Wabana Lake	1319	1941	11-JAN-1980
Blue Bill Lake	655443	Lake	Cass	MN	465314N	0935821W	Thunder Lake	1342	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	655447	Swamp	Crow Wing	MN	464720N	0940908W	Stewart Lake	1427	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640293	Lake	Hubbard	MN	470101N	0950017W	Skunk Lake	1444	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	655448	Lake	Crow Wing	MN	464622N	0935944W	Roosevelt Lake	1273	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Snow Lake	655451	Lake	Cook	MN	480339N	0905214W	Long Island Lake	1837	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Jay Lake	655446	Lake	Lake	MN	475438N	0910414W	Lake Polly	1650	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Wing Lake	655452	Lake	Lake	MN	475746N	0910157W	Lake Polly	1644	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640291	Lake	Isanti	MN	452833N	0933006W	Lake Fremont	951	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640288	Lake	Houston	MN	434907N	0911736W	La Crescent	630	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640292	Lake	Aitkin	MN	463010N	0934505W	Iron Hub	1266	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640290	Lake	Clearwater	MN	475149N	0951654W	Gurneau Lake	1207	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Lake	640289	Lake	Scott	MN	444812N	932600W	Eden Prairie	696	-	11-JAN-1980
Blue Rock Lake	655449	Lake	Itasca	MN	473312N	0933448W	Clubhouse Lake	1381	-	11-JAN-1980

row(s) 1 - 15 of 17

Since there is no conflict between the name Bluewater Lake and any other geographic place in Minnesota, the qualifier used for the heading will be the abbreviated form of the state name: **(Minn.)**. However, since there is a conflict between the variant name Blue Lake and other lakes in Minnesota with the same name, the qualifier in the reference for the variant name will need to resolve this conflict. When there are two or more entities with the same name in the same jurisdiction, and the entities are all of the same type (e.g., all lakes), SCM H 810 says to resolve the conflict by adding to the qualifier the name of the next smaller jurisdiction. The qualifier in the reference from Blue Lake thus becomes **(Itasca County, Minn.)**.

SACO proposal: **Bluewater Lake (Minn.)**

151 \$a Bluewater Lake (Minn.)

451 \$a Blue Lake (Itasca County, Minn.)

550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Minnesota

670 \$a Work cat.: Minnesota. Dept. of Natural Resources. Bluewater/Wabana Lakes, 1992: \$b map verso (Bluewater Lake, 364 acres, max. depth of 120 feet)

670 \$a GNIS, Sept. 21, 1999 \$b (Bluewater Lake, lake, Minn., Itasca Co., 47deg.25min.11sec.N, 093deg.33min.12sec.W, variant name: Blue Lake; other Blue Lakes in other counties)

781 \_0 \$z Minnesota \$z Bluewater Lake

3) Title of work being cataloged: *Highlead logging operation, Cavanaugh Lake, Washington.*

This is a digital reproduction of a 1937 photograph by Darius Kinsey. It is part of an online collection of the photographer’s images. Each digital image has associated metadata, including LC subject headings. The correct form of heading for Cavanaugh Lake must be determined in order to include it in the metadata.

Research in GNIS shows that the BGN approved form of name of this lake is Lake Cavanaugh rather than Cavanaugh Lake:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results**

**Click the feature name for details**

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County ▲	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map	Elevft)	BGN	Entry Date
Cavanaugh Creek	1517507	Stream	Skagit	WA	483841N	1220712W	Cavanaugh Creek	433	-	10-SEP-1979
Cavanaugh-Oso Truck Trail	1517508	Trail	Skagit	WA	481753N	1215649W	Oso	1112	-	10-SEP-1979
Lake Cavanaugh	1517510	Lake	Skagit	WA	481924N	1220041W	Stimson Hill	1010	-	10-SEP-1979
Mount Cavanaugh	1797407	Summit	Skagit	WA	481956N	1220341W	Stimson Hill	1975	1998	15-JUL-1998
Lake Cavanaugh	1852944	Populated Place	Skagit	WA	481934N	1220116W	Stimson Hill	1014	-	01-FEB-2000
Little Cavanaugh Lake	1517509	Lake	Snohomish	WA	474708N	1213957W	Gold Bar	1542	1989	31-DEC-1992

1 - 6

Following instructions in SCM H 690 to rearrange the elements of the name so that the distinctive portion of the name occurs in the initial position, the heading will be established in inverted form.

GNIS also shows that there is both a lake and a populated place called Lake Cavanaugh in Washington state. To break a conflict between entities of different types, SCM H 810 directs the cataloger to add to the qualifier a generic term, in English, designating the type of entity, and to separate this term from the geographic term within the qualifier by a space, a colon, and another space.

SCM H 830 provides information on how to formulate geographic subdivisions correctly. The form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision is included in field 781 of the authority record per instructions in SCM H 836.

**SACO proposal: Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)**

- 151 \$a Cavanaugh, Lake (Wash. : Lake)
- 451 \$a Cavanaugh Lake (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Lake Cavanaugh (Wash. : Lake)
- 550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Washington (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Kinsey, D. Highlead logging operation, Cavanaugh Lake, Washington, 1937, via Darius Kinsey photographs Web site, Sept. 21, 2005
- 670 \$a GNIS, Sept. 21, 2005 \$b (Lake Cavanaugh, lake, Skagit Co., Washington, variant: Cavanaugh Lake; also Lake Cavanaugh, pop. place, Skagit Co.)
- 781 \_0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Cavanaugh, Lake (Lake)

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

The qualifier in the reference from the form Cavanaugh Lake is just (**Wash.**) because there is no conflict between this form and any other entity in Washington state.



4) Title of work being cataloged: *Diamond Lake warmwater fishery assessment, fall 1999.*

The work deals with a lake in Pend Oreille County, Washington. Diamond Lake is both a lake and a populated place in Pend Oreille County, as well as the name of lakes in other Washington counties:

**Geographic Names Information System Feature Query Results**

**Click the feature name for details**

Click any column name to sort the list ascending ▲ or descending ▼

Feature Name	ID	Class	County ▼	State	Latitude	Longitude	Map	Elevation	BGN	Entry Date
Diamond Lake	1518751	Lake	Yakima	WA	462739N	1211632W	Jennies Butte	5741	-	10-SEP-1979
Diamond Lake	1518753	Lake	Snohomish	WA	481053N	1211441W	Lime Mountain	5266	-	10-SEP-1979
Diamond Lake	1518754	Lake	Pend Oreille	WA	480744N	1171144W	Diamond Lake	2342	-	10-SEP-1979
Diamond Lake	1518755	Populated Place	Pend Oreille	WA	480719N	1171157W	Camden	2365	-	10-SEP-1979
Blue Diamond Lake	1516604	Lake	Okanogan	WA	485536N	1192324W	Oroville	2398	-	31-DEC-1992
Diamond Lake	1518752	Lake	Kittitas	WA	472632N	1210946W	Polallie Ridge	4951	-	10-SEP-1979
Black Diamond Lake	1503401	Lake	King	WA	471751N	1220102W	Black Diamond	545	-	10-SEP-1979

1 - 7

Because the conflict is between entities of different types *and also* between entities of the same type, both the next smaller jurisdiction and the type of entity must be included in the qualifier (SCM H 810).

SACO proposal: **Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake)**

- 151 \$a Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County, Wash. : Lake)
- 550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Washington (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Phillips, L. Diamond Lake warmwater fishery assessment ... 2000: \$b introd. (Diamond Lake is a moderately sized body of water located approximately 9.5 kilometers west of Newport, Washington, in southern Pend Oreille County)
- 670 \$a GNIS, Sept. 4, 2001 \$b (Diamond Lake, lake, Pend Oreille County; also pop. place of same name in Pend Oreille Co.; also lakes of same name in other Wash. counties)
- 670 \$a Washington place names database, via WWW, Sept. 4, 2001 \$b (Diamond Lake, a 1,000-acre, 1-mile-long, spring-fed lake, is nine miles southwest of Newport, in south central Pend Oreille County)
- 670 \$a DeLorme Mapping Co. Wash. atlas & gazetteer, c1995: \$b p. 105 (Diamond Lake; Pend Oreille Co.)
- 781 \_0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Diamond Lake (Pend Oreille County : Lake)

## New Subject Proposal Examples

### Example S: Undifferentiated geographic feature

Title of work being cataloged: *Fort McPherson, NT caribou harvest study*.

The work is about the 1992-93 caribou harvest by hunters from Fort McPherson, Northwest Territories. Ninety percent of the caribou harvested were taken in the Yukon Territory, primarily in the Rock River area. There is no authority record for the Rock River, so the cataloger does research to establish it. The *GEOnet Names Server* lists three Rock Rivers in Canada, two of which are in the Yukon (area code CA12 below):

**Geonames Search Results**

REGION	DESIG.	LATITUDE	LONGITUDE	AREA	UTM	JOG NO.	UFI	UNI	PPL CLASS	MOD. DATE
<b>NAME</b>										
<b>NAME</b>										
Native										
(1)	STM	67° 19' 00" N	137° 05' 00" W	CA12	MV16	NQ07-03	-572399	-808225		1993-12-14
Native										
(1)	STM	60° 06' 00" N	127° 08' 00" W	CA12	XG06	NP09-14	-572398	-808224		1993-12-14
Native										
(1)	STM	44° 59' 00" N	073° 05' 00" W	CA08	XQ58	NL18-12	-572397	-808223		1993-12-14

The cataloger determines that the particular Rock River discussed in the work being cataloged is the one at 67°19'00"N 137°05'00"W. Ordinarily, conflicts between geographic entities with the same name must be resolved. SCM H 800 states that “in the event that there are two or more rivers with the same name in the same jurisdiction, qualify by the name of the appropriate smaller jurisdiction, in accordance with the provisions of H 810.”

For U.S. states, the next smallest political jurisdiction is the county (borough or census area in Alaska, parish in Louisiana). In Canada, the next smallest political division below province or territory is called many different things. Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island have counties. Québec has regional county municipalities. British Columbia has regional districts. Alberta, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, and Newfoundland and Labrador have census divisions. Ontario has three different types of census divisions: single-tier municipalities, upper-tier municipalities (which can be regional municipalities or counties), and districts. The Northwest Territories and Nunavut are divided into regions. The Yukon has no census divisions and is considered a census division in itself.



## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

In the rare cases where no smaller jurisdiction can be added to a qualifier to resolve a conflict, an undifferentiated geographic feature heading is established and one heading is used for all of the features in a jurisdiction with the same name. LC indicates this in subject authority records by adding in a 670 citation the text “Cannot differentiate; hdg. is used for both” (or “for all” if more than two features with the same name).

Since the Yukon does not have any appropriate smaller political jurisdictions that can be used to distinguish the two Rock Rivers there, one heading is proposed that will represent both rivers.

SACO proposal: **Rock River (Yukon)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for geographic features is coded “No Decision.”

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Rock River (Yukon)
- 550 \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Yukon
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Nagy, J.A. Fort McPherson, NT caribou harvest study, 1993: \$b p. iii (Rock River area; Yukon)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, Jan. 2, 2002 \$b (Rock River, STM, Canada, Yukon, 67deg.19min.00sec.N 137deg.05min.00sec.W; also, Rock River, STM, Canada, Yukon, 60deg.06min.00sec.N 127deg.08min.00sec.W; Cannot differentiate; hdg. used for both)
- 781 \_0 \$z Yukon \$z Rock River

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### **Headings for named buildings, building details, and structures**

#### Example T

Title of the work being cataloged: *The Carnegie Mansion Reunion*.

This work is about the Columbia University School of Social Work, which used to reside in the Carnegie Mansion, and also about the building itself.

Research shows that this structure was initially a private mansion which currently houses a museum. According to SCM H 405, a heading for this type of structure will reside in the LC/SACO Authority File with a 110 MARC tag (see p. 107 (1XX: Headings) and p. 112 (110: Corporate Name)).

SCM H 1334 provides instructions on how to formulate headings for buildings and other structures. "Carnegie Mansion" appears to be the predominant name in the reference sources. Other variants found are used as cross references. According to H 1334 section 3, a geographic qualifier must be added to the name. The building is located in New York City, so the heading established in the LC/NACO Authority file for the city is used as the qualifier, but reformulated by placing it within a single set of parentheses as instructed in SCM H 810 section 1c. Thus **New York (N.Y.)** becomes **(New York, N.Y.)** when used as a qualifier.

SACO proposal: **Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded "No Decision."

008/06 No Decision

- 110 2\_ \$a Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)
- 410 2\_ \$a Andrew Carnegie Mansion (New York, N.Y.)
- 410 2\_ \$a Andrew Carnegie Residence (New York, N.Y.)
- 550 \_ \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z New York (State)
- 670 \$a Carnegie Mansion Reunion (1993 : New York, N.Y.?). The Carnegie Mansion Reunion, 1993: \$b cover (Carnegie Mansion)
- 670 \$a Cooper-Hewitt WWW Web site, Jan. 13, 2003 \$b (The Carnegie Mansion; East Ninety-first St. in Manhattan)
- 670 \$a Grove dict. of art online, Jan. 13, 2003: \$b under Hardy Holzmann Pfeiffer Associates (Hardy Holzmann Pfeiffer Associates renovated the Andrew Carnegie Mansion, New York, designed by Babb, Cook & Willard in 1901, to house the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in 1976) under Babb, Cook & Willard (The Andrew Carnegie Residence (1899-1901; now the Cooper-Hewitt Museum) on Fifth Ave., New York)

Example U

Title of work being cataloged: *The Old Senate Chamber, 1810-1859.*

This pamphlet describes the history of the Old Senate Chamber in the U.S. Capitol Building in Washington, D.C.

According to SCM H 405, buildings occupied by corporate bodies, and named building details such as windows, doors, domes, and rooms, are established as subject headings in the LC/SACO Authority File. Buildings are tagged 110 and building details are tagged 150. Instructions for establishing names of buildings and named building details are found in SCM H 1334. Building details are entered directly under their name and qualified by the name of the building, generally followed by a comma and the geographic location of the building. The name of the building in the qualifier must also be established if it is not already in the authority file.

Since the Old Senate Chamber is a room within the U.S. Capitol, it can be established as a topical heading under its own name. The qualifier will be the heading for the Capitol.

SACO proposal: **Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded “No Decision.”

Broader terms for the type of building detail subdivided geographically by place, and for the name of the building in which the detail is located, are included in the authority record.

008/06 No Decision

150 \$a Old Senate Chamber (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)

550 \$w g \$a Rooms \$z Washington (D.C.)

510 2\_ \$w g \$a United States Capitol (Washington, D.C.)

670 \$a Work cat.: *The Old Senate Chamber, 1810-1859*, 2000 \$b (Capitol Building; Senate chamber on the second floor designed by Benjamin Henry Latrobe; Senate resided there from 1810 to 1859; U.S. Supreme Court occupied the room from 1860 to 1935; in 1976, the Old Senate Chamber was restored to its 1850s appearance)

670 \$a *The United States Congress & Capitol*, 1999: \$b v. 1, p. 40, etc. (Old Senate Chamber; the third chamber created for the use of the Senate in the Capitol; used 1810-1859)

952 \$a LC pattern: Lyndon Baines Johnson Room (United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.)

### *New Subject Proposal Examples*

Since the heading for the United States Capitol is already established, a second proposal for it is not needed. If the backdoor heading **Rooms--Washington (D.C.)** is not already established, CPSO staff will create an authority record for it.

Example V

Title of work being cataloged: *Preliminary report on traffic and revenues for the proposed Fountain Square underground parking garage.*

The cataloger needs a heading for Fountain Square, a plaza in Cincinnati, Ohio. Instructions for establishing names of buildings and other structures are found in SCM H 1334. Guidance on how to tag headings for structures can be found in H 405. The tagging varies depending on the type of structure, e.g.:

Bridges	151
Canals	151
Fortresses	151
Fountains	150
Gates	150
Lighthouses	110
Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.)	150
Plazas (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	151
Pools, Public	110
Racetracks	110
Streets	151
Tombs	150
Towers	150
Tunnels	151
Walls	150

Non-geographic structures such as arches, shrines, gates, monuments, and towers are tagged 150. Structures such as plazas, bridges, highways, docks, and tunnels are considered geographic and tagged 151. Other structures such as public pools, power plants, lighthouses, and racetracks are treated as buildings and tagged as corporate body headings (110).

Since Fountain Square is a type of plaza, it will be coded as a geographic heading. According to SCM H 1334, enter the heading for a particular building or structure directly under its own name, in uninverted form, and qualify it by the name(s) of the jurisdiction(s) in which the structure is located. For structures in cities, the qualifier is the name(s) of the city or cities as established in the LC/NACO Authority File. If a city is not yet established, it must be established through NACO. Consult SCM H 1334 for complete details on qualifiers for buildings and other structures.

SACO proposal: **Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)**

Per the instructions in SCM H 364, the 008/06 in headings for named buildings and structures is coded "No Decision."

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

Broader term references are made for the type of structure subdivided geographically by country or first order political division of the U.S., Canada, and Great Britain. Because this geographic heading is located in a city, the heading may not be used as a geographic subdivision (see SCM H 836). A 667 field containing the standardized wording "This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision" is included in the record.

008/06 No Decision

- 151 \$a Fountain Square (Cincinnati, Ohio)
- 550 \$w g \$a Plazas \$z Ohio
- 667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Preliminary report on traffic and revenues for the proposed Fountain Square underground parking garage, 1959.
- 670 \$a Cincinnati, the Queen City, c1988: \$b p. 139 (new Fountain Square dedicated Oct. 16, 1971, 100 years and 10 days after the original dedication)
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, via WWW, July 18, 2006: \$b Cincinnati, Ohio article (Fountain Square is a public square located at Fifth and Vine Streets in downtown Cincinnati; its centerpiece is the landmark bronze Tyler Davidson Fountain; the space was donated to the city of Cincinnati by prominent citizen Henry Probasco and dedicated on its completion in 1871 to his brother-in-law, Tyler Davidson)
- 670 \$a GNIS, July 18, 2006 \$b (Fountain Square, Hamilton County, OH, Park; 39deg.06min.04sec.N, 84deg.30min.37sec.W)

If the backdoor heading **Plazas--Ohio** is not already established, CPSO staff will create an authority record for it.

For additional examples of non-geographic and geographic structures, consult Appendix A. Examples there include: **Albert Memorial Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland)**; **Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.)**; **Porta Nigra (Trier, Germany)**; **Alexanderplatz (Berlin, Germany)**; **Fisherman's Wharf (San Francisco, Calif.)**; **John A. Roebling Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)**; **Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.)**; **Washington State Route 520 (Wash.)**.

## Headings with non-geographic qualifiers

### Example W

Title of work being cataloged: *The art of pictorial photography, 1890-1925.*

*Photography, Pictorial* and *Pictorial photography* were references under the established heading **Photography, Artistic**, but that heading is too broad for the work being cataloged. Pictorial photography is also the name of a specific movement within artistic photography; subject access for this movement is needed. Authority research shows that the term “pictorialism” is preferred over “pictorial photography.” The heading is qualified because “pictorialism” could be a concept associated with literature or other arts. The reference must also be qualified to distinguish it from the general term that is a cross-reference on the broader heading.

SACO proposal: **Pictorialism (Photography movement)**

The proposed heading is coded “May Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say to authorize for geographic subdivision headings that represent topics that have a geographic orientation, or that could be discussed in relation to a place or to a population in a particular location, including disciplines and fields of study. A check of other headings representing artistic movements (e.g., **Neoromanticism (Art movement)**; **Symbolism (Art movement)**) would show that they are authorized to be subdivided geographically.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Pictorialism (Photography movement)
- 450 \$a Pictorial photography (Photography movement)
- 550 \$w g \$a Photography, Artistic
- 670 \$a Work cat.: *The art of pictorial photography, 1890-1925, c1992.*
- 670 \$a AAT \$b (Pictorialist; use with reference to the 19th-century movement in photography)
- 670 \$a Atkins, R. *Artspoke, c1993* \$b (Pictorialism; 1886 to 1914; Europe and U.S.; important groups: Photo-Secession in N.Y., Linked Ring in London; related: 291; Secession)
- 670 \$a Intl. Center of Photog. encyc. of photog., c1984 \$b (Pictorial photography; Pictorialism)
- 670 \$a *The photo-secession : the golden age of pictorial photography in America, c1983.*
- 680 \$i Here are entered works on the late 19th century and early 20th century photography movement interested in recognition of photography as an art form and often represented by soft-focus, impressionistic images.
- 952 \$a SCM H 1250
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Impressionism (Art); Symbolism (Art movement)

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### Example X

Title of work being cataloged: *Golden years*, a detective novel by John Preston featuring the fictitious character Alex Kane. The library also has other novels by this author featuring the same character.

SCM H 1610 provides instructions on how to establish headings for fictitious characters. LC policy is to assign headings for fictitious characters to collections of literary texts featuring the character. LC will also assign such headings to individual plays or poems if the character has been borrowed by the author from another author or source and used in the creation of a new work. Libraries that follow the *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc.* (2nd ed., American Library Association, 2000) may assign headings for fictitious and legendary characters and groups to individual works of fiction, drama, poetry, humor, folklore, and music if the characters or groups appear prominently in three or more works. LC assigns such headings to individual works of fiction only as cataloging resources permit.

Since no heading for the Alex Kane character has been established, and since the character appears in three or more works, the SACO library can propose a heading for it.

SACO proposal: **Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)**

The proposed heading is coded “Not Subd Geog” per instructions in SCM H 364 that say headings for names of fictitious and legendary characters are not authorized for geographic subdivision.

008/06 Not Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Kane, Alex (Fictitious character)
- 450 \$a Alex Kane (Fictitious character)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Preston, J. *Golden years*, c1984: \$b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #2)
- 670 \$a Preston, J. *Stolen moments*, c1985: \$b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #4)
- 670 \$a Preston, J. *Lethal silence*, c1987: \$b cover (The mission of Alex Kane ; #6)



**Headings also appropriate for use as a free-floating subdivision**

Example Y

Title of work being cataloged: *Essential blogging*.

The work being cataloged is about weblogs, also commonly known as blogs. At the time the book was received, there was no heading to describe this new phenomenon. After doing research, the cataloger determines that the standard term for these resources is weblogs and deems that a SACO proposal is warranted.

SACO proposal: **Weblogs**

Per instructions in SCM H 364, the proposed heading is coded as authorized for geographic subdivision.

In the course of doing authority research, it becomes apparent that it would be useful to also establish --**Weblogs** as a free-floating subdivision, since weblogs exist on a multitude of subjects, and a library may select them for cataloging. Weblogs can also be about the person creating the weblog, so in addition to authorizing a new subdivision under topical headings, it should be authorized under individual persons and classes of persons and ethnic groups.

There is no proposal form to create free-floating subdivisions. They can be proposed by including a general see also reference to the subdivision (field 360) in the record for the corresponding main heading (see SCM H 371 and examples on p. 128 of this manual), or by establishing the subdivision under one of the pattern headings in the SCM (see SCM H 1146 and example BB below (p. 79)). If approved, CPSO will create the actual free-floating subdivision authority records and add the subdivision to the appropriate list(s) in the SCM.

Since the Web proposal form does not have a specific box for general see also notes, text intended for field 360 should be input in the comments box, and a member of the Cooperative Cataloging Team will transcribe it into the proper field.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 \$a Weblogs  
360 \$i subdivision \$a Weblogs \$i under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings  
450 \$a Blogging  
450 \$a Blogs  
450 \$a Filters (Weblogs)  
450 \$a Newspages (Weblogs)  
450 \$a Web logs  
550 \$w g \$a Diaries

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

- 550 \$w g \$a Web sites  
670 \$a Work cat.: Essential blogging, c2002: \$b cover (weblog)  
670 \$a Stauffer, T. Blog on : the essential guide to building dynamic weblogs, c2002.  
670 \$a Seattle times, Feb. 24, 2003, via WWW, viewed Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (“Weblogs, for the uninitiated, are personal journals (a term I prefer to diaries) published on the Internet. They're essentially Web sites but differ by being almost all text and by being updated often, sometimes every few minutes. They tend to contain little original content beyond musings and commentaries, but what they're good at is immediacy so-called real-time information and at linking, whether it be to published articles, e-mail threads, other Weblogs or whatever. The power of blogs, as they're nicknamed, comes from the Web's one-to-many publishing capabilities.”; blogging)  
670 \$a Barger, J. Weblog resources FAQ, via WWW, Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (A weblog (sometimes called a blog or a newspaper or a filter) is a webpage where a weblogger (sometimes called a blogger, or a pre-surfer) “logs” all the other webpages she finds interesting. The format is normally to add the newest entry at the top of the page, so that repeat visitors can catch up by simply reading down the page until they reach a link they saw on their last visit. (This causes some minor, unavoidable confusions when the logger comments on an earlier link that the visitor hasn't reached yet.))  
670 \$a LC database, Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (weblogs; blogging)  
670 \$a Adam Curry's weblog, viewed Feb. 26, 2003.  
670 \$a Peter Scott's library blog, viewed Feb. 26, 2003.  
670 \$a Carter, R. Honeyguide Web log, viewed Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (“The honeyguide is an African bird that leads humans to beehives, then shares in the spoils when the hive has been opened. This Web Log contains links to some caches of honey I've found on the Net.”)  
670 \$a Asiafirst : a weblog about the art and culture of India and China, viewed Feb. 26, 2003.  
670 \$a Catalogablog, viewed Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (“Library cataloging, classification, metadata, subject access and related topics”)

After the proposal was approved including the general see also note, LC staff created the free-floating form and topical subdivision authority records for **--Weblogs:**

- 073 \$a H 1095 \$a H 1100 \$a H 1103 \$a H 1110 \$z lcsh  
185 \$v Weblogs  
680 \$i Use as a form subdivision under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for weblogs by those persons or about those persons, groups, or topics.  
681 \$i Reference under the heading \$a Weblogs  
  
073 \$a H 1095 \$a H 1100 \$a H 1103 \$a H 1110 \$z lcsh  
180 \$x Weblogs

- 680 \$i Use as a topical subdivision under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for weblogs by those persons or about those persons, groups, or topics.
- 681 \$i Reference under the heading \$a Weblogs

*Note: In February 2006, LC changed the subject heading and the subdivisions from **Weblogs** to **Blogs** because the latter term had become the predominant form in popular usage. The authority record was revised by LC to:*

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Blogs
- 360 \$i subdivision \$a Blogs \$i under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings
- 450 \$a Blogging
- 450 \$a Web logs
- 450 \$w nne \$a Weblogs
- 550 \$w g \$a Diaries
- 550 \$w g \$a Web sites
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Essential blogging, c2002: \$b cover (weblog)
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, Jan. 20, 2006 \$b (A blog is a website in which items are posted on a regular basis and displayed in reverse chronological order. The term blog is a shortened form of weblog or web log. Authoring a blog, maintaining a blog or adding an article to an existing blog is called “blogging”. Individual articles on a blog are called “blog posts,” “posts” or “entries”. A person who posts these entries is called a “blogger”)
- 670 \$a Stauffer, T. Blog on : the essential guide to building dynamic weblogs, c2002.
- 670 \$a Seattle times, Feb. 24, 2003, via WWW, viewed Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (“Weblogs, for the uninitiated, are personal journals (a term I prefer to diaries) published on the Internet. They're essentially Web sites but differ by being almost all text and by being updated often, sometimes every few minutes. They tend to contain little original content beyond musings and commentaries, but what they're good at is immediacy so-called real-time information and at linking, whether it be to published articles, e-mail threads, other Weblogs or whatever. The power of blogs, as they're nicknamed, comes from the Web's one-to-many publishing capabilities.”; blogging)
- 670 \$a Barger, J. Weblog resources FAQ, via WWW, Feb. 26, 2003 \$b (A weblog (sometimes called a blog or a newpage or a filter) is a webpage where a weblogger (sometimes called a blogger, or a pre-surfer) “logs” all the other webpages she finds interesting. The format is normally to add the newest entry at the top of the page, so that repeat visitors can catch up by simply reading down the page until they reach a link they saw on their last visit. (This causes some minor, unavoidable confusions when the logger comments on an earlier link that the visitor hasn't reached yet.))

## *New Subject Proposal Examples*

### **Headings with non-free-floating subdivisions**

#### Example Z

Title of work being cataloged: *Farm folk, city folk : stories, tips, and recipes celebrating local food for food lovers of all stripes.*

This work is about the pleasures of fresh, flavorful local food and celebrates the farmers and herb gardeners, seed sellers and greenhouse growers, cheesemakers, chocolate makers, restaurateurs and chefs who are in the forefront of this movement in British Columbia. Throughout the book are recipes by top chefs using local B.C. ingredients.

The most specific subject heading available to bring out the recipes aspect of this work, **Cookery, Canadian**, is not authorized for geographic subdivision. SCM instruction sheet H 1475 "Cooking and Cookbooks" explains that headings for national and ethnic styles of cooking are not subdivided geographically. Instead, to express a regional style, catalogers are instructed to establish a heading for the national style of cooking subdivided with a topical subdivision for that regional style, for example, **Cookery, American--Louisiana style**.

SACO proposal: **Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style**

Although the cataloger found that the National Library of Canada (now Library and Archives Canada) had assigned the proposed heading to this work in its online catalog, in order for the heading to be valid in LCSH, it had to be proposed through SACO.

The 008/06 in the proposed heading is coded "No Decision." It is not clear if the heading falls under the types of headings covered in SCM H 364 sections 1 and 2. H 364 also says that in case of doubt about whether to authorize a heading for geographic subdivision, code it as "No Decision." A check of existing headings for other styles of cookery (e.g., **Cookery, American--Pacific Northwest style; Cookery, Chinese--Sichuan style**) would show that they are all coded "No Decision."

008/06 No Decision

- 150 \$a Cookery, Canadian \$x British Columbia style
- 450 \$a British Columbia style of Canadian cookery
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Barbolet, H. *Farm folk, city folk : stories, tips, and recipes celebrating local food for food lovers of all stripes*, c1998 \$b (NLC subject found in ResAnet: **Cookery, Canadian--British Columbia style**)
- 670 \$a Evans-Atkinson, M. *British Columbia heritage cookbook : a treasury of British Columbia treats*, 1984.
- 670 \$a Spalding, A. *A celebration of British Columbia foods*, 1994.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: **Cookery, American--California style**

Example AA

Title of work being cataloged: *Wetlands centre study*.

The title is not particularly explanatory of the subject of this work, but the work is about centers in Victoria, Australia, that interpret wetlands to the public. Searching LCSH reveals that there is a general heading, **Interpretation of cultural and natural resources**, and several more specific headings, such as **Historic sites--Interpretive programs**, **National parks and reserves--Interpretive programs**, and **Natural areas--Interpretive programs**. A search of the free-floating subdivisions listed in the SCM (or in *Free-floating Subdivisions: An Alphabetical Index*) shows that **--Interpretive programs** is not free-floating. Therefore, if it is to be used in combination with a main heading other than the ones already established in LCSH, a SACO proposal must be made for it. Further authority research identifies the phrases "wetland interpretation" and "wetlands interpretation" in the titles of other works. Since LCSH has already established a pattern for interpretive programs, these phrases are proposed as cross-references.

SACO proposal: **Wetlands--Interpretive programs**

The proposed heading is coded "May Subd Geog" per instructions in SCM H 364 section 1 that say that when establishing main heading-subdivision combinations formulated with a subdivision that is normally authorized for further subdivision by place, code the extended heading for geographic subdivision. The topic covered by the main heading-subdivision combination can be discussed in relation to a place and other established headings that include the subdivision **--Interpretive programs** (e.g., **Historic sites--Interpretive programs**) are authorized to be subdivided geographically.

008/06 May Subd Geog

- 150 \$a Wetlands \$x Interpretive programs
- 450 \$a Wetland interpretation
- 450 \$a Wetlands interpretation
- 550 \$w g \$a Interpretation of cultural and natural resources
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Beckmann, E.A. *Wetlands centre study*, c1993: \$b p. ii ("Centres dedicated to interpreting wetlands are rare in Australia. Nevertheless, there are several education/interpretation centres in Victoria which have a significant wetlands focus ...")
- 670 \$a OCLC, Feb. 6, 2001 \$b (wetland interpretation; wetlands interpretation)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Natural areas--Interpretive programs

Note: Although the topical subdivision **--Interpretive programs** could potentially be needed under any kind of cultural or natural resource heading like the ones above, it is not possible to establish it as a free-floating subdivision because its use would still be very narrow. Headings for cultural or natural resources do not fit any of the five types of free-floating subdivisions described in SCM H 1095. Each time the subdivision

*New Subject Proposal Examples*

--**Interpretive programs** is needed under a new subject, it must be established editorially.

**Establishing a free-floating subdivision under a pattern heading**

Example BB

Title of work being cataloged: *Balsam woolly aphid predators native to Oregon and Washington.*

This work is about natural predators of an insect pest known as the balsam woolly adelgid. A search of LCSH shows that a heading already exists for this insect: **Balsam woolly adelgid**. The concept of predators is covered by the headings **Predatory animals** and **Predation (Biology)**. Although a cataloger might simply assign the heading for the insect and **Predatory animals** and/or **Predation (Biology)** (all of which could be subdivided geographically for the locations in question), this would still be somewhat broad and ambiguous, because neither the title of the work nor the assigned group of headings makes it clear whether the balsam woolly adelgid is the predator or the prey. What is really needed is a way to indicate clearly that the work really isn't about the insect *per se* but about the animals that eat it. Since the work does not focus on one specific group of predators, the best concept that one can come up with to describe this work is "predators of the balsam woolly adelgid." One way to formulate this concept in LCSH would be to use a phrase heading: **Predators of balsam woolly adelgid**. Another way would be to use a combination of main heading plus topical subdivision: **Balsam woolly adelgid--Predators of**. The benefit of using the latter type of heading rather than the former is that if **--Predators of** were free-floating it could be used under any animal. Using the phrase form of heading would mean that a separate heading would have to be established every time it was needed, e.g., **Predators of mice**, **Predators of fishes**, etc.

Authority research identifies numerous other works that are about the predators of an animal but in which the specific predators are not described. The existence of other works like this provides support for choosing the free-floating route rather than separate phrase headings. The pattern headings for free-floating subdivisions under animals (SCM H 1147) are the headings **Fishes** and **Cattle**. In order to make the subdivision **--Predators of** free-floating, a proposal must be made to establish it in combination with one of the pattern headings. Since this particular subdivision is appropriate in general to all animals rather than to just domestic animals, **Fishes** is chosen as the pattern in the SACO proposal.

SACO proposal: **Fishes--Predators of**

According to SCM H 860, new subdivisions for which geographic orientation is logical are established with authorization for further subdivision by place.

008/06 May Subd Geog

150 \$a Fishes \$x Predators of  
450 \$a Predators of fishes  
670 \$a Work cat.: Mitchell, R.G. Balsam woolly aphid predators native to Oregon and

### *New Subject Proposal Examples*

- Washington, 1962: \$b p. 3 (native predators affecting the balsam woolly aphid)
- 670 \$a LC database, Mar. 17, 2000 \$b (ti: predators of *Adelges* spp.; predators and anti-predator behaviour of the black-headed gull)
- 670 \$a OCLC, Mar. 17, 2000 \$b (ti: nature's predators on fish farms; native predators of the hemlock woolly adelgid; honey bee pests, predators, and diseases; tadpoles and predators; mite pests and their predators; predators of the common duiker; predators of the Douglas-fir beetle; predators of the gypsy moth; predators of the spruce budworm)

Once **Fishes--Predators of** is approved, **--Predators of** can be used under any other heading governed by the pattern. Thus for the work being cataloged listed above, the heading **Balsam woolly adelgid--Predators of** can be assigned even though there is no authority record specifically authorizing it.

As part of the process of establishing this new free-floating subdivision, the existing see also reference (MARC 21 authority field 360) on **Predatory animals** needs to be expanded. The SACO library should propose this change along with its free-floating proposal.

Existing see also reference:

- 150 \$a Predatory animals
- 360 \$i individual predatory animals and groups of predatory animals, e.g. \$a Coyote; Eagles

Proposed revised see also reference:

- 150 \$a Predatory animals
- 360 \$i individual predatory animals and groups of predatory animals, e.g. \$a Coyote; Eagles; \$i and subdivision \$a Predators of \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Fishes--Predators of

For another example illustrating the establishment of a free-floating subdivision, see the example **Harvard University--Professional staff** in the corporate name section of Appendix A (p. 255).



## Summary of LC Subject Heading Editorial Process

### SACO Participant

- **Recognizes** that an item is about a subject that is not yet adequately represented in LCSH
- **Searches** both the subject and name authority files to make sure that the subject is not already covered by existing headings or references
- **Checks** *Free-Floating Subdivisions* or *Subject Cataloging Manual* to verify that the topic is not covered by an existing heading--free-floating subdivision combination; checks H 405 for named entities
- **Searches** bibliographic files to see subject headings assigned to similar works
- **Verifies** the concept in reference sources (670, 675)
- **Decides** form of heading and correct MARC tagging (1XX)
- **Determines** the reference structure by consulting sources and *LCSH* (4XX, 5XX)
- If the contributor is a new SACO participant, **contacts** a SACO mentor to have the mentor review the proposal and provide them with feedback
- **Completes** the Web subject authority proposal form and submits it online
- If the contributor is a new SACO participant, **notifies** the SACO mentor that they have submitted the proposal using the Web form, so that the mentor can review it online in the LC Authorities website

### SACO Mentor

- **Reviews** submitted proposal for validity and for sufficient authority research
- **Functions** as a liaison between the submitting institution and the SACO staff within LC's Cooperative Cataloging Team
- **If proposal is deemed ready for LC review, notifies** the Cooperative Cataloging Team that it can be processed without any editing (or with minor editing) and that bibliographic file maintenance can be performed

### Cooperative Cataloging Team

- **Downloads** proposals submitted on the Web form for inclusion in the Web OPAC's online LC authorities database
- **Reviews** proposal for validity and for sufficient authority research unless it has already been reviewed by a SACO mentor
- **Searches** LC database for bibliographic file maintenance
- **Notifies** submitting library of any changes needed to the form of heading
- **Forwards** printout of proposal to the Cataloging Policy and Support Office (CPSO). At this point, the proposal may be considered to be **preapproved**. It may be assigned as a subject heading on a bibliographic record with the understanding that it may be changed at the Editorial Meeting.

## *Editorial Process Summary*

### **Subject Heading Editorial Team (SHed)**

- **Searches** proposed heading and references to ensure that heading is not a duplicate, that UFs are not existing headings, and that proposed BTs and RTs are valid or proposed headings; also checks pattern headings for appropriateness of references
- **Inputs** proposals into the LC system, if they have not already been input in Coop. Cat. SHed staff complete the fixed fields of the authority record and create authority records for backdoor headings for which records or proposals do not already exist.
- **Copies** other records requiring changes because of proposals; adds forced filing fields to group related headings together on weekly list
- **Prepares** tentative weekly list of proposals for circulation within LC and posting to the LC intranet. Headings shown on the weekly lists have the LCCN prefix **sp**, indicating that they are in the proposal stage. Once available, the tentative weekly lists are posted to the SACO Web site (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html>) by the Coop Team.

### **Cataloging Policy Specialist**

- **Reviews** and investigates proposals on weekly list, checking for adherence to policy for formulation of headings and references and for adequate support in cited sources
- **Gathers** comments from LC catalogers and maintains overall viewpoint of *LCSH*

### **Editorial Meeting**

- **Held** every Wednesday morning
- **Communication** of changes to proposals
- **Discussion** of policy issues raised by individual proposals

### **After the Editorial Meeting**

- **Cataloging policy specialist** returns any proposals needing more work; prepares the *Summary of Decisions* for email distribution within LC and over SACOLIST and for inclusion on the approved weekly list
- *Summary of Decisions* is posted to the SACO home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/cpsoed/cpsoeditorial.html>) by the Coop Team
- **SHed Team** inputs changes and validates authority records; posts alphabetically arranged approved weekly list to the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page (<http://www.loc.gov/aba/>), including the *Summary of Decisions* of the editorial meeting
- **Cooperative cataloging liaison** informs the SACO participant of any changes in the 1XX which were made at the Editorial Meeting. Changes in reference hierarchy or 670 citations are not communicated to the SACO participant; it is incumbent on each SACO participant to search the authority record or review the published weekly lists for any of these other changes.

- **Cataloging Distribution Service (CDS)** distributes approved authority records in weekly tape distribution to subscribers, utilities, vendors, etc. LCSH in *Classification Web* is updated with new headings and heading changes.

## **Sample Pages from Tentative Weekly List**



**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS SUBJECT HEADINGS  
TENTATIVE WEEKLY LIST 11 (March 22, 2000)**

---

SACO participants should contact their SACO liaison on the Cooperative Cataloging Team with comments/questions.

---

Changes to existing headings are indicated by an asterisk. (A) indicates proposals that were approved before the editorial meeting. (C) indicates proposals submitted by cooperating libraries.

---

*Note: Diacritics and special characters are not displayed in this list.*

- (C) 150 Agriculture--Forecasting [sp 85002435]  
\* 450 UF Agricultural forecasting
- (C) 150 Airplanes--Models [May Subd Geog] [sp 85002841]  
\* 450 UF Aircraft, Model  
\* 450 UF Model aircraft
- (C) 150 Appleyard family (Fictitious characters) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001902]
- (C) 150 Byfield family (Fictitious characters) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001901]
- (A) 150 Arakelov theory [sp 00000203]  
053 QA242.6  
450 UF Arakelov geometry  
550 BT Arithmetical algebraic geometry
- (A) 150 Capacity theory (Mathematics) [sp 00000204]  
450 UF Capacity of a set  
550 BT Pluripotential theory
- (C) 150 Arkansas River shiner [May Subd Geog] [sp 00001930]  
053 QL638.C94 (Zoology)  
450 UF Notropis girardi  
550 BT Notropis
- 150 BattleTanx Global Assault (Game) [sp 00002073]  
053 GV1469.35.B36  
550 BT Video games
- (C) 151 Bethesda, Pool of (Jerusalem) [sp 00001906]  
667 This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.  
451 UF Pool of Bethesda (Jerusalem)  
451 UF Sheep Pool (Jerusalem)  
550 BT Ponds--Jerusalem
- (C) 150 Ponds--Jerusalem [sp 00001904]

130 Bible--History of Biblical events--Art [sp 00003108]  
430 UF Bible--Art

151 Bois-Francs (Quebec) [sp 00002852]

(C) 150 Book donations [May Subd Geog] [sp 00001925]  
450 UF Donations of books  
550 BT Libraries--Gifts, legacies

(A) 150 Bradley, Helen (Fictitious character) [Not Subd Geog] [sp  
00001236]  
450 UF Helen Bradley (Fictitious character)

(C) 150 Brock, David (Fictitious character) [Not Subd Geog] [sp  
00001972]  
450 UF Brock, Detective Chief Inspector (Fictitious character)  
450 UF David Brock (Fictitious character)  
450 UF DCI Brock (Fictitious character)  
450 UF Detective Chief Inspector Brock (Fictitious character)

151 Canada--Civilization--Italian influences [sp 00001119]  
551 BT Italy--Civilization

(C) 151 Carbuncle Pond (R.I.) [sp 00001937]  
550 BT Lakes--Rhode Island

150 Lakes--Rhode Island [sp 00004575]

(C) 150 Cartographic materials [May Subd Geog] [sp 00003498]  
550 BT Nonbook materials

(C) 150 Cataloging of cartographic materials [May Subd Geog] [sp  
00003497]  
053 Z695.6  
550 BT Cartographic materials

(A) 150 Globes [May Subd Geog] [sp 85055294]  
\* 053 G3170 CANCEL  
\* 053 G3170-G3171  
\* 550 BT Cartographic materials

150 Maps [sp 85080858]  
\* 550 BT Cartographic materials  
\* 550 BT Nonbook materials CANCEL

150 Remote-sensing images [May Subd Geog] [sp 94003667]  
\* 550 BT Cartographic materials

(C) 150 Chain Gate (Jerusalem) [sp 00001890]  
450 UF Bab al-silsila (Jerusalem)  
550 BT Gates--Jerusalem

(C) 110 Chateau de Boussu (Boussu, Belgium) [sp 00000241]  
410 UF Boussu Castle (Boussu, Belgium)  
410 UF Kasteel van Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)  
550 BT Castles--Belgium

110 Ch u chia ta yuan (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China) [sp  
00001502]  
410 UF Ch u Family Courtyard (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China)  
550 BT Courtyards--China

(C) 151 Coal Creek Park (Wash.) [sp 00003495]  
451 UF Coal Creek Canyon Park (Wash.)

## **Sample Pages from Approved Weekly List**

## CATALOGING POLICY AND SUPPORT OFFICE

### LIBRARY OF CONGRESS SUBJECT HEADINGS WEEKLY LIST 11 (March 22, 2000)

Changes to existing headings are indicated by an asterisk. (A) indicates proposals that were approved before the editorial meeting. (C) indicates proposals submitted by cooperating libraries.

- 150 Agriculture--Forecasting [sp 85002435]  
\* 450 UF Agricultural forecasting
- 150 Airplanes--Models [May Subd Geog] [sp 85002841]  
\* 053 TL770-TL777 CANCEL  
\* 053 TL770-TL778  
\* 450 UF Aircraft, Model  
\* 450 UF Model aircraft
- (C) 150 Appleyard family (Fictitious characters) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001902]
- (A) 150 Arakelov theory [sp 00000203]  
053 QA242.6  
450 UF Arakelov geometry  
550 BT Arithmetical algebraic geometry
- 150 Arches--Jerusalem [sp 00002697]
- (C) 150 Arkansas River shiner [May Subd Geog] [sp 00001930]  
053 QL638.C94 (Zoology)  
450 UF Notropis girardi  
550 BT Notropis
- 150 BattleTanx Global Assault (Game) [sp 00002073]  
053 GV1469.35.B36  
550 BT Video games
- 100 Bennett family [Not Subd Geog] [sp 85013199]  
\* 500 RT Curtis-Bennett family
- (C) 151 Bethesda, Pool of (Jerusalem) [sp 00001906]  
667 This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.  
451 UF Pool of Bethesda (Jerusalem)  
451 UF Sheep Pool (Jerusalem)  
550 BT Ponds--Jerusalem
- 130 Bible--History of Biblical events--Art [sp 00003108]  
430 UF Bible--Art
- 151 Big Smoky Valley (Nev.) [sp 00001412]  
451 UF Big Smokey Valley (Nev.)  
451 UF Great Smoky Valley (Nev.)  
451 UF Smokey Valley (Nev.)  
451 UF Smoky Valley (Nev.)  
451 UF Wen-A-No-Nu-Fee Valley (Nev.)  
451 UF Won-A-No-Nu-Fee Valley (Nev.)  
550 BT Valleys--Nevada



- 151 Bois-Francis (Quebec) [sp 00002852]
- (C) 150 Book donations [May Subd Geog] [sp 00001925]
  - 450 UF Book donation
  - 450 UF Donation of books
  - 550 BT Gifts
  - 550 BT Libraries--Gifts, legacies
- (A) 150 Bradley, Helen (Fictitious character) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001236]
  - 450 UF Helen Bradley (Fictitious character)
- (C) 150 Brock, David (Fictitious character) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001972]
  - 450 UF David Brock (Fictitious character)
  - 450 UF DCI Brock (Fictitious character)
  - 450 UF Detective Chief Inspector Brock (Fictitious character)
- (C) 150 Byfield family (Fictitious characters) [Not Subd Geog] [sp 00001901]
  - 151 Canada--Civilization--Italian influences [sp 00001119]
  - 551 BT Italy--Civilization
- (A) 150 Capacity theory (Mathematics) [sp 00000204]
  - 450 UF Capacity of a set
  - 550 BT Pluripotential theory
- (C) 151 Carbuncle Pond (R.I.) [sp 00001937]
  - 550 BT Ponds--Rhode Island
- (C) 150 Cartographic materials [May Subd Geog] [sp 00003498]
  - 550 BT Nonbook materials
- (C) 150 Cataloging of cartographic materials [May Subd Geog] [sp 00003497]
  - 053 Z695.6
  - 550 BT Cartographic materials
- (C) 150 Chain Gate (Jerusalem) [sp 00001890]
  - 450 UF Bab al-Silsila (Jerusalem)
  - 450 UF Sha ar ha-Shalsholet (Jerusalem)
  - 550 BT Gates--Jerusalem
- (C) 110 Chateau de Boussu (Boussu, Belgium) [sp 00000241]
  - 410 UF Boussu Castle (Boussu, Belgium)
  - 410 UF Kasteel van Boussu (Boussu, Belgium)
  - 550 BT Castles--Belgium
- 110 Ch u chia ta yuan (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China) [sp 00001502]
  - 410 UF Ch u Family Courtyard (Qi Xian, Shanxi Sheng, China)
  - 550 BT Courtyards--China
- (C) 151 Coal Creek Park (Wash.) [sp 00003495]
  - 451 UF Coal Creek Canyon Park (Wash.)
  - 550 BT Parks--Washington (State)
- 150 Communal living [May Subd Geog] [sp 85029011]
  - \* 450 UF Counter culture CANCEL
- (C) 150 Computer adaptive testing [May Subd Geog] [sp 95006191]
  - \* 450 UF Adaptive testing, Computer

## MARC Authority Format for Subjects

### MARC Authority Format for Subjects

In order to create SACO proposals for subject headings catalogers must know the fundamentals of the MARC 21 authority format as it pertains to subjects. SACO subject heading proposals should be submitted with explicit MARC coding for most parts of the proposal. Detailed explanations of all MARC fields and values may be found in the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* published by the Library of Congress Cataloging Distribution Service.

#### Sample OCLC Authority Record

ARN 5175526					
Rec stat	c	Entered	20040709	Replaced	20040819081237.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lml	n
Roman	■	Ref status	a	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	■
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
Source	c	Name use	b	Subj use	a
Ser use	b	Rules	n		
010		sh 00002585			
040		PHC #b eng #c DLC #d WaU			
150		Hindu diaspora			
360		#i headings of the type #a Hindus--[place]			
450		Diaspora, Hindu			
450		Hindus #x Diaspora			
550		East Indian diaspora #w g			
550		Human geography #w g			
550		Hindus #x Migrations			
670		Work cat.: Hindu diaspora : global perspectives, 1999.			
680		#i Here are entered works on the dispersion of Hindu people beyond India.			

Sample RLIN21 Authority Record

ID:sh 00002585 [Earlier Version](#)  
VST:2004-08-19 ST:p MS:c EL:n  
001 sh 00002585  
005 20040819081237.0  
008 [040709-?-anannbabn.....?a-ana.....c](#)  
010 .. †ash 00002585  
040 .. †aPHC†beng†cDLC†dWaU  
150 .. †aHindu diaspora  
360 .. †iheadings of the type†aHindus--[place]  
450 .. †aDiaspora, Hindu  
450 .. †aHindus†xDiaspora  
550 .. †wg†aEast Indian diaspora  
550 .. †wg†aHuman geography  
550 .. †aHindus†xMigrations  
670 .. †aWork cat.: Hindu diaspora : global perspectives, 1999.  
680 .. †iHere are entered works on the dispersion of Hindu people beyond India.

An expanded display of field 008 in this RLIN21 record is shown on the following page.

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

### **Authority 008 Display for sh 00002585**

(00-05) Date entered on file	2004-07-09
(06) Direct or indirect geographic subdivision	· = Not subdivided geographically
(07) Romanization scheme	? = No attempt to code
(08) Language of catalog	· = No information provided
(09) Kind of record	a = Established heading
(10) Descriptive cataloging rules	n = Not applicable
(11) Subject heading system/thesaurus	a = Library of Congress Subject Headings
(12) Type of series	n = Not applicable
(13) Numbered or unnumbered series	n = Not applicable
(14) Heading use-main or added entry	b = Not appropriate
(15) Heading use-subject added entry	a = Appropriate
(16) Heading use-series added entry	b = Not appropriate
(17) Type of subject subdivision	n = Not applicable
(28) Type of government agency	? = No attempt to code
(29) Reference evaluation	a = Tracings are consistent with the heading
(31) Record update in process	a = Record can be used
(32) Undifferentiated personal name	n = Not applicable
(33) Level of establishment	a = Fully established
(38) Modified record	· = Not modified
(39) Cataloging source	c = Cooperative cataloging program

**Fixed Fields**

LC staff will supply most fixed field values in subject authorities. The one fixed field that must be included in all SACO proposals is field 008/06. Other important fixed fields for subject authorities are also described below.

**008/06: Direct or Indirect Geographic Subdivision**

SACO proposals should specify the value of fixed field 008/06. This field is labeled **Geo subd:** in OCLC.

The four values used by LC in fixed field 008/06 in subject authorities are i, # (blank), | (fill character), and n:

- i        Subdivided geographically--indirect
- #        Not subdivided geographically
- |        No decision
- n        Not applicable

A blank value appears in RLIN21 as a small hyphen (-). In OCLC displays, the field is truly blank.

The fill character in RLIN21 is a question mark. In OCLC the fill character appears as a square black box: ■

SCM H 364 provides additional information on how to code fixed field 008/06 and describes LC's policy on when to use each of the values listed above. The default value is no decision. Catalogers should be familiar with LC policy and indicate the proper value to be used in their proposals.

## MARC Authority Format for Subjects

### 008/09: Kind of Record

This field is labeled **Auth/ref:** in OCLC.

The values found in this field include:

a Established heading record

Authority records with value **a** in 008/09 are records in which field 100-155 contains an established (i.e., authorized) heading.

b or c Reference record

Authority records with values **b** or **c** in 008/09 are records in which field 100-155 contains an **unestablished** (i.e., unauthorized) heading. Reference records for subjects also contain a general see reference in field 260. Field 260 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. See SCM H 374 for additional information on reference records and general see references.

ARN 2050404							
Rec stat	c	Entered	19870129	Replaced	20000228110135.0		
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n	Source	
Roman	■	Ref status	n	Mod rec		Name use	b
Govt agn	■	Auth status	n	Subj	a	Subj use	b
Series	n	Auth/ref	b	Geo subd	n	Ser use	b
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n	Rules	n

010		sh 87000533
040		DLC #b eng #c DLC #d DLC
150		Aerial exploration
260		#i subdivision #a Aerial exploration #i under countries and regions larger than countries for works on exploration conducted from the air

In the example above, **Aerial exploration** is not valid for use as a topical subject heading, but it is valid for use as a topical subdivision.

d Subdivision record

Authority records with value **d** in 008/09 are records in which the 18X field contains the authorized form of a general, chronological, genre/form term, or a geographic name that may be used only as a subject subdivision portion of an established heading.

ARN 5028950					
Rec stat	c	Entered	19990312	Replaced	20060508142338.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ref status	a	Mod rec	<input type="checkbox"/>
Govt agn	<input type="checkbox"/>	Auth status	n	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	d	Geo subd	<input type="checkbox"/>
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	a
				Source	<input type="checkbox"/>
				Name use	b
				Subj use	b
				Ser use	b
				Rules	n

010		sh 99002234
040		IEN #b eng #c DLC #d DLC
073		H 1140 #z lcsh
180		#x Aerial exploration
480		#x Exploration, Aerial
580		#x Discovery and exploration #w g
680		#i Use as a topical subdivision under names of countries, etc., for works on exploration conducted from the air
681		#i Reference under the heading #a Discoveries in geography; #i and under the general see references #a Aerial exploration; Exploration, Aerial

# MARC Authority Format for Subjects

## 008/11: Subject Heading System/Thesaurus

This field is labeled **Subj:** in OCLC.

- a LCSH
- b AC (children's literature) subject heading

ARN 2144591

Rec stat	c	Entered	19860211	Replaced	19971117161441.3
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	a	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	i
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
				Source	■
				Name use	b
				Subj use	a
				Ser use	b
				Rules	n

010	sh 85127634
040	DLC #b eng #c DLC #d DLC
150	Theft
450	Stealing #w nne
550	Offenses against property #w g
550	Receiving stolen goods
670	Nat. crim. just. thes. #b (Theft offenses NT Larceny)
670	Black's law dict. #b (theft: "wider term than larceny")
670	Random House.
670	Amer. heritage dict.
670	Web. 3.

ARN 5361844

Rec stat	c	Entered	20000808	Replaced	20010502131113.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	a	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	b
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	■
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
				Source	■
				Name use	b
				Subj use	a
				Ser use	b
				Rules	n

010	sj 00001270
040	DLC #b eng #c DLC #d DLC
150	Stealing
450	Theft



**008/29: Reference Evaluation**

This field contains a code indicating whether the 4XX/5XX fields (references) in an authority record have been evaluated for their consistency with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in the record. The field is labeled **Ref status:** in OCLC.

- a references evaluated: consistent with policy
- b references unevaluated: may or may not be consistent with policy
- n not applicable, no references

A subject authority with value **a** is potentially useful as a pattern to follow for the reference structure of an analogous heading that is being proposed. Subject authority records with value **b** are evaluated and recoded on a case-by-case basis. LC will recode records from **b** to **a** if references are revised to reflect current subject cataloging policy. Value **n** is valid in records for subject headings with no references, such as family names with no variants, named geographic regions with no variants, and many backdoor headings (see glossary). Older subject headings in LCSH may lack appropriate references and are reviewed and upgraded on a case-by-case basis.

Examples of subject authority with unevaluated references:

ARN		2057947			
Rec stat	c	Entered	19860211	Replaced	19941122064234.4
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	b	Mod rec	
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	i
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
Source		Name use	b	Subj use	a
Ser use	b	Rules	n		

010		sh 85114559
040		DLC #b eng #c DLC #d DLC
053		TE230
150		Roads, Earth
450		Dirt roads
450		Earth roads

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

ARN 2033721					
Rec stat	n	Entered	19860211	Replaced	19860211000000.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	b	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	i
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
010	■	sh 85055818			
040	■	DLC #b eng #c DLC			
150	■	Golfers			
550	■	Golf #w g			

Example of subject authority with no references (family name with no variants):

ARN 7087320					
Rec stat	n	Entered	20061019	Replaced	20061019095157.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	n	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	■
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
010	■	sh2006006693			
040	■	Uk #b eng #c DLC			
100	3	Carnarvon family			
670	■	Work cat.: The Carnarvon letters 1943-1944, 1994.			
675	■	Am. fam. names; #a Cent. pop. growth			

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

Example of older subject authority lacking appropriate references (an insect species lacking a used for (field 450) reference from the scientific name and a broader term reference (field 550) from the next highest taxonomic level (genus)):

ARN 2153271					
Rec stat	c	Entered	19860211	Replaced	19941205070753.9
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	n	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	i
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
010	■	sh 85129149			
040	■	DLC #b eng #c DLC #d DLC			
053	■	SB608.P3			
150	■	Striped peach-worm			

Example of backdoor heading with no references:

ARN 7297420					
Rec stat	n	Entered	20061229	Replaced	20061229075951.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	■	Ref status	n	Mod rec	■
Govt agn	■	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	■
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
010	■	sh2006008386			
040	■	UPB #b eng #c DLC			
150	■	Canals #z Argentina			

## MARC Authority Format for Subjects

### 008/33: Level of Establishment

This field is labeled **Auth status:** in OCLC.

- a fully established
- c provisional

Value **a** is the default. Value **c** is used in situations in which, because of lack of information, the heading cannot be established in the language called for in the SCM:SH guidelines (see H 1334 for buildings and other structures, H 1925 for parks).

Example of provisional subject heading:

ARN 5104821									
Rec stat	n	Entered	19990921	Replaced	19991115152439.0				
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n	Source	c		
Roman	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ref status	a	Mod rec	<input type="checkbox"/>	Name use	b		
Govt agn	<input type="checkbox"/>	Auth status	c	Subj	a	Subj use	a		
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ser use	b		
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n	Rules	n		
010		sh 99013331							
040		AzTeS #b eng #c DLC							
151		Pirin National Park (Bulgaria)							
451		Vikhren National Park (Bulgaria)							
550		National parks and reserves #z Bulgaria #w g							
670		Endemic and relict insects in the Pirin National Park, Bulgaria, c1997.							
670		UNESCO World Heritage sites homepage, July 19, 1999: #b (Pirin National Park 41°40' N 22°50' E; est. 1963 Vikhren National Park, enlarged and renamed Pirin National Park in 1976)							
675		GEOnet; #a Times atlas							
781	0	#z Bulgaria #z Pirin National Park							

Level of Establishment is coded “c” for provisional because the Bulgarian name of this national park was not available at the time this heading was established.

If a SACO library subsequently finds pertinent information about a specific heading that was established provisionally, the library may submit a change proposal to revise the form of heading to match the form called for in the SCM guidelines, and LC will then recode the value in 008/33 to show that the heading is now fully established.

**008/39: Cataloging Source**

This field contains a code indicating the creator of an authority record. It is labeled **Source:** in OCLC.

- # (blank) LC
- c Cooperative cataloging program (SACO) participant

ARN 7297195					
Rec stat	n	Entered	20061021	Replaced	20061219144840.0
Type	z	Upd status	a	Enc lvl	n
Roman	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ref status	a	Mod rec	<input type="checkbox"/>
Govt agn	<input type="checkbox"/>	Auth status	a	Subj	a
Series	n	Auth/ref	a	Geo subd	i
Ser num	n	Name	n	Subdiv tp	n
				Source	c
				Name use	b
				Subj use	a
				Ser use	b
				Rules	n

010	sh2006007644
040	MoSR #b eng #c DLC
150	Fashion and architecture
450	Architecture and fashion
550	Architecture #w g
670	Work cat.: Skin + bones : parallel practices in fashion and architecture, 2006.
670	Fashion + architecture, 2000.

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **Variable Fields**

#### **010: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN)**

This field contains a unique identifier assigned to a subject authority record by the Library of Congress. Both indicator positions are undefined and contain a blank. Subfield \$a contains a valid LCCN. Subfield \$z is used for canceled or invalid LCCNs (e.g., when an authority record is canceled because it is covered by another existing authority, the LCCN of the canceled record is included in the 010 subfield \$z of the record that is retained).

LCCNs consist of an alphanumeric prefix followed by a unique number. Established subject authority records have a prefix beginning with **sh** (LCSH) or **sj** (Annotated Card (juvenile) subject headings). LCCNs of subject authority proposals shown on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix **sp**.

Records for subject headings in existence before November 1985 have the prefix **sh 85** and records for headings created December 1985 to December 1986 begin with the prefix **sh 86**. Records created since 1987 have the year of creation in the prefix (e.g., **sh 87** for 1987 and **sh 00** for 2000); in 2001, the form of year in the prefix changed from two digits to four (e.g., **sh2001**).

The Library of Congress will assign an LCCN to each proposed new subject authority submitted by SACO participants. Subject heading change proposals must include the LCCN of the record being changed in the 010 line on the change proposal form.

Examples:

010 \$a sh 93006958

010 \$a sh 00003802

010 \$a sh2001004461

010 \$a sh 86002596 \$z sh 85049597

**019: Library of Congress Control Number (LCCN) - Local Field**

This is a locally defined field used for processing subject heading proposals. After a Coop Team member reviews/revises a proposal and determines that it is ready to be reported to CPSO for inclusion on a weekly list, he or she adds an 019 field to the record with the same record control number as in the 010 field and the prefix **sp**. The presence of the 019 field causes that record to load overnight into the LCSH Master Database. When the SHed team receives a printout of the proposal from Coop, they process it for a weekly list. After the editorial meeting when a subject heading has been approved, the 019 field and the legend “[proposed]” or “[proposed update]” at the end of the 1XX field are deleted from the record, and it is distributed to Classification Web, OCLC, and other subject authority record subscribers.

Example of a subject proposal in the Library of Congress Authorities website that has been reviewed by Coop and sent to CPSO for inclusion on a weekly list (note the presence of an 019 field in the record):

**LC Control Number:** sh2006020266

**HEADING:** Soils Silver content [proposed]

**000** 00785cz a2200181n 450

**001** 7052446

**005** 20061221000553.0

**008** 061221ij anannbabn |a nna c

**906** \_ |t \*\*\*\* |u \*\*\*\* |v 0

**010** \_ |a sh2006020266

**019** \_ |a sp2006020266

**040** \_ |a WaU |b eng |c DLC

**150** \_ |a Soils |x Silver content [proposed]

**550** \_ |w g |a Silver

**670** \_ |a Work cat.: Throbäck, I.N. Exploring denitrifying communities in the environment, 2006: |b appendix III, p. 1 (how silver affects bacterial communities in soil; effects of silver on denitrifying bacteria in arable soil) p. 4 (bioavailable silver) p. 4 of cover (agricultural soil contaminated with silver)

**952** \_ |a 0 bib. record(s) to be changed

**952** \_ |a LC pattern: Soils--Aluminum content; Soils--Copper content

**953** \_ |a yz00

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

Example of a subject proposal in the Library of Congress Authorities website that has not yet been reviewed by Coop and sent to CPSO (note the lack of an 019 field in the record):

**LC Control Number:** sh2007000582

**HEADING:** Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.) [proposed]

**000** 01203nz a2200241n 450

**001** 7081589

**005** 20070130094831.0

**008** 070130|| anannbabn |a nna c

**906** \_\_ |t \*\*\*\* |u \*\*\*\* |v 0

**010** \_\_ |a sh2007000582

**040** \_\_ |a WaU |b eng |c DLC

**151** \_\_ |a Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.) [proposed]

**451** \_\_ |a SAM Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.)

**451** \_\_ |a Seattle Art Museum Olympic Sculpture Park (Seattle, Wash.)

**550** \_\_ |w g |a Sculpture parks |z Washington (State)

**667** \_\_ |a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

**670** \_\_ |a Work cat.: Seattle Art Museum Olympic Sculpture Park map & guide, 2006 or 2007: |b title panel (SAM Olympic Sculpture Park) map recto (Olympic Sculpture Park)

**670** \_\_ |a Time, Jan. 29, 2007: |b p. 125 (Seattle's new Olympic Sculpture Park)

**670** \_\_ |a Seattle Art Museum home page, Jan. 28, 2007 |b (Olympic Sculpture Park)

**670** \_\_ |a Hackett, R. Olympic Sculpture Park: a critic's tour, via Seattle post-intelligencer Web site, Jan. 28, 2007 |b (Olympic Sculpture Park) |u <http://seattlepi.nwsource.com/specials/sculpturepark/tour/>

**952** \_\_ |a 0 bib. record(s) to be changed

**952** \_\_ |a LC pattern:

**953** \_\_ |a yz00



**040: Cataloging Source**

Each library submitting a subject proposal must have a MARC organization code (see the **Introduction** for further information). MARC organization codes are **not** the same as the codes assigned to libraries in utilities such as OCLC. The MARC code is given in 040 subfield \$a of new subject headings, which identifies the institution creating the subject heading. Subfield \$b (language of cataloging, i.e., the language used in notes and note fields) will have the value **eng** for English. Subfield \$c (transcribing agency) will have the value **DLC** for the Library of Congress. For change proposals, the library's MARC organization code will be added at the end of the 040 in subfield \$d (modifying agency). Both indicator positions in field 040 are undefined and contain a blank.

Examples:

040 \$a CaAE \$b eng \$c DLC  
Heading created by Edmonton Public Library

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC \$d LiViLNB  
Heading created by LC, later modified by Martynas Ma^vydas National Library of Lithuania

040 \$a CSfA \$b eng \$c DLC \$d WaU  
Heading created by California Academy of Sciences, later modified by University of Washington

040 \$a OCl \$b eng \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d FU  
Heading created by Cleveland Public Library, later modified by LC, and most recently modified by University of Florida

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **053: LC Classification Number**

This field may hold a single classification number or may indicate a span of numbers appropriate to a subject heading. The field is repeatable; if two or more separate numbers or spans of numbers are pertinent to a heading, they can be included in different 053 fields. Multiple 053 fields are arranged by class number alphabetically and numerically.

The first indicator is blank. The second indicator will have value **0** (assigned by LC). A single number or the beginning number of a span is given in subfield \$a. The ending number of the span is given in subfield \$b. Subfield \$c is used to provide a qualifier that explains what aspect of the topic that classification number or span represents. SCM H 365 provides further details on when to assign and when not to assign a number or span of numbers to a heading, when to include qualifiers, and when to assign multiple 053 fields. If multiple 053s are present, each of them must include an appropriate qualifier in subfield \$c.

SACO libraries that do not use LC Classification do not need to be concerned with the 053 field. On subject heading proposals from non-LCC libraries, Coop. Cat. or CPSO staff will provide 053 data if it is appropriate.

Examples:

053 0 \$a DS632.D68

150 \$a Dou Donggo (Indonesian people)

053 0 \$a KZ6440 \$b KZ6530

150 \$a Humanitarian law

053 0 \$a QL737.M35 \$c Zoology

053 0 \$a SF408.6.K35 \$c Zoo animals

150 \$a Kangaroos

053 0 \$a QH91.8.B6 \$c General

053 0 \$a QH92 \$b QH95.59 \$c Local, by body of water

053 0 \$a QH101 \$b QH198 \$c Local, by region, etc.

150 \$a Marine biodiversity

053 0 \$a HG289 \$c Finance

053 0 \$a HG551 \$c Coinage

053 0 \$a QD181.A9 \$c Chemistry

053 0 \$a QE391.G6 \$c Mineralogy

053 0 \$a TP245.G6 \$c Chemical technology

150 \$a Gold

## **1XX: Headings**

In an established heading record (see **008/09**), the 1XX field contains the heading selected for use as the authorized LCSH term. The following tags are authorized in MARC 21:

- 100 Heading--Personal Name
- 110 Heading--Corporate Name
- 111 Heading--Meeting Name
- 130 Heading--Uniform Title
- 148 Heading--Chronological Term
- 150 Heading--Topical Term
- 151 Heading--Geographic Name
- 155 Heading--Genre/Form Term

In a subdivision authority record, the 1XX contains the heading selected for use as the authorized subject subdivision. The following tags for subject subdivisions are authorized in MARC 21:

- 180 Heading--General Subdivision
- 181 Heading--Geographic Subdivision
- 182 Heading--Chronological Subdivision
- 185 Heading--Form Subdivision

LC does not yet use fields 148 and 155. Chronological and genre/form main headings presently are coded 150. Subdivision authority records (180, 182, 185) are created at LC based on proposals to authorize new free-floating subdivisions. Subdivision authority records for geographic headings (181) are not routinely created because subdivision usage information is added to 781 fields in authority records for geographic places tagged 151 instead. SACO proposals are therefore currently limited to headings coded 100, 110, 111, 130, 150, and 151.

Follow MARC 21 authority standards for indicators and subfield codes (see below under each field for further information on valid indicators).

Libraries must be familiar with LC policy on whether certain problematic named entities are established as name headings through NACO or as subjects through SACO. This policy is known colloquially as the "division of the world" and is explained in detail in SCM H 405. There are two groups of headings listed in SCM H 405: group one consists of entities whose headings are always established in the name authority file according to AACR2 and LCRI, and group two consists of headings always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name or subject authority file depending on whether the heading is needed as a descriptive access point in a bibliographic record. A tabular consolidation of both groups of headings is available on the SACO home page as "An Alphabetic List of Ambiguous Entities" at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/alpha405.html>.

**MARC Authority Format for Subjects**

SCM H 405 also describes procedures to follow when an established subject for a named entity should be moved from the subject authority file and reestablished in the name authority file.

Subject heading proposals can be identified in the Library of Congress Authorities Web database by the presence of legends at the end of the 1XX field. New subject proposals will have the legend “[proposed]” and change proposals will have the legend “[proposed update].”

Proposal for new heading **Sea bird chicks** viewed in the LC Authorities website:

The Library of Congress >> Go to Library of Congress Online Catalog



# LIBRARY OF CONGRESS AUTHORITIES





Help
New Search
Search History
Headings List
Start Over

SOURCE OF HEADINGS: Library of Congress Online Catalog

YOU SEARCHED: Subject Authority Headings = Sea bird

SEARCH RESULTS: Displaying 1 through 25 of 25.

◀ Previous    Next ▶

#	Bib Records	<i>select icon in first column to...</i> View Authority Headings/References	Type of Heading
 1	0	Sea bird chicks [proposed]	LC subject headings
 2	41	Sea birds	LC subject headings
3	15	Sea birds.	LC subject headings for children
4	1	Sea birds Africa, Southern Bibliography.	LC subject headings
5	3	Sea birds Alaska.	LC subject headings
6	1	Sea birds Alaska.	LC subject headings for children
7	1	Sea birds Alaska Alaska, Gulf of Geographical distribution Maps.	LC subject headings
8	1	Sea birds Alaska Congresses.	LC subject headings
9	1	Sea birds Alaska Cook Inlet.	LC subject headings
10	1	Sea birds Alaska Effect of water pollution on.	LC subject headings

## MARC Authority Format for Subjects

LC Control Number: sh2006020263

HEADING: Sea bird chicks [proposed]

000 00730cz a2200229n 450

001 7052438

005 20061220224710.0

008 061220i| anannbabn |a nna c

906 \_\_ |t \*\*\*\* |u \*\*\*\* |v 0

010 \_\_ |a sh2006020263

019 \_\_ |a sp2006020263

040 \_\_ |a WaU |b eng |c DLC

150 \_\_ |a Sea bird chicks [proposed]

450 \_\_ |a Chicks, Sea bird

450 \_\_ |a Sea birds |x Infancy

450 \_\_ |a Seabird chicks

550 \_\_ |w g |a Animals |x Infancy

550 \_\_ |w g |a Sea birds

670 \_\_ |a Work cat.: Gummer, H. Chick translocation as a method of establishing new surface-nesting seabird colonies, c2003; |b abstr. (seabird chicks)

952 \_\_ |a 0 bib. record(s) to be changed

952 \_\_ |a LC pattern: Tiger cubs; Moose calves

953 \_\_ |a yz00

Change proposal to the heading **Humorous stories** viewed in the LC Authorities website:

The Library of Congress

>> Go to Library of Congress Online Catalog



# LIBRARY OF CONGRESS AUTHORITIES



SOURCE OF HEADINGS: Library of Congress Online Catalog

YOU SEARCHED: Subject Authority Headings = Humorous stories n

SEARCH RESULTS: Displaying 1 through 25 of 25.

◀ Previous Next ▶

#	Bib Records	<i>select icon in first column to...</i> View Authority Headings/References	Type of Heading
1	5	Humorous stories, New Zealand.	LC subject headings
 2	0	Humorous stories, Nigerian (English)	LC subject headings
 3	2	Humorous stories, Philippine (English)	LC subject headings
 4	0	Humorous stories [proposed update]	LC subject headings
 5	1	Humorous stories, Romanian	LC subject headings
 6	17	Humorous stories, Russian	LC subject headings
7	1	Humorous stories, Russian History and criticism.	LC subject headings
8	4	Humorous stories, Russian Translations into English.	LC subject headings
9	12	Humorous stories, Scottish.	LC subject headings

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

**LC Control Number:** sp 85062975

**HEADING:** Humorous stories [proposed update]

**000** 00621cz a2200229n 450

**001** 7052420

**005** 20061220180540.0

**008** 061220 | anannbabn |b ana

**035** \_\_ |a (DLC)sh 85062975

**906** \_\_ |t 8516 |u fk07 |v 0

**010** \_\_ |a sp 85062975

**019** \_\_ |a sp 85062975

**040** \_\_ |a DLC |c DLC |d DLC |d WaU

**150** \_\_ |a Humorous stories [proposed update]

**450** \_\_ |a Comic novels

**450** \_\_ |a Comic stories

**450** \_\_ |a Humorous fiction

**550** \_\_ |w g |a Fiction

**550** \_\_ |w g |a Wit and humor

**952** \_\_ |a 0 bib. record to be changed

**670** \_\_ |a GSAFD, 2000 |b (Humorous fiction. UF Comic novels)

**953** \_\_ |a xx00 |b yz00

Specific information on each of the 1XX tags used in SACO proposals follows below. The examples under each tag illustrate the variety of subject headings created by libraries worldwide and established through SACO.

**100: Personal Name**

The valid first indicator values are 0 (forename), 1 (surname), and 3 (family name). The second indicator is blank for 100.

Family names, royal houses, and dynasties are established as subject headings in LCSH and may be proposed through SACO. Names of individual persons are established by NACO libraries and are not included in LCSH. SACO libraries may not propose headings for individuals. However, proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established personal names (see SCM H 1095, H 1110, and H 1120 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for personal name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples:

- 100 3 \$a Arsacid dynasty, \$d 247 B.C.-224 A.D.
- 100 3 \$a Arundel, Earls of
- 100 3 \$a Dohna-Reichertswalde, Counts of
- 100 3 \$a Eliseev family
- 100 3 \$a Gediminas, House of
- 100 3 \$a La Farge family
- 100 3 \$a Lodi dynasty, \$d 1451-1526
- 100 3 \$a Mecklenburg, Dukes of
- 100 3 \$a Umayyad dynasty
- 100 3 \$a Ysenburg-Büdingen, House of

Examples of personal names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

- 100 0 \$a Jesus Christ \$x Black interpretations
- 100 1 \$a Lincoln, Abraham, \$d 1809-1865 \$x Funeral journey to Springfield
- 100 1 \$a McCartney, Paul \$x Death hoax
- 100 0 \$a Moses \$c (Biblical leader) \$x Islamic interpretations
- 100 0 \$a Napoleon \$b I, \$c Emperor of the French, \$d 1769-1821 \$x Elba and the Hundred Days, 1814-1815
- 100 0 \$a Paul, \$c the Apostle, Saint \$x Jewish interpretations
- 100 1 \$a Presley, Elvis, \$d 1935-1977 \$x Sightings

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **110: Corporate Name**

The valid first indicators are 1 (jurisdiction name) and 2 (name in direct order). The second indicator is blank.

Corporate bodies capable of authorship are established by NACO libraries and are not included in LCSH. SACO libraries may not propose headings for these types of corporate bodies. SCM H 405 includes lists of ambiguous entities that are established either as names or subjects. Because LC considers names of buildings and some other structures (e.g., racetracks; resorts) to be like corporate names, headings for them are established as subjects coded 110 and may be proposed via SACO.

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established corporate names (see SCM H 1095 and H 1105 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for corporate name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples:

- 110 2 \$a 390 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
- 110 2 \$a Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)
- 110 2 \$a Curragh Racecourse (Kildare, Ireland)
- 110 2 \$a Daikokuya Jūtaku (Kaminoyama-shi, Japan)
- 110 2 \$a Grady Gammage Memorial Auditorium (Tempe, Ariz.)
- 110 2 \$a House of the Tragic Poet (Pompeii)
- 110 2 \$a Huntington Castle (Huntington, Herefordshire, England)
- 110 2 \$a Maricopa County Courthouse (Phoenix, Ariz. : Washington Street)
- 110 2 \$a Nootka Lighthouse (Yuquot, B.C.)
- 110 2 \$a Pavillion de la Norvège (Exposition internationale, 1937, Paris, France)
- 110 2 \$a USA National Pavilion (Salon international de l'aéronautique et de l'espace, 39th, 1991, Paris, France)
- 110 2 \$a Walt Disney World Resort (Fla.)

Examples of corporate names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

- 110 2 \$a Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints \$x Apostles
- 110 1 \$a Great Britain. \$b Parliament \$x University representation
- 110 1 \$a Iran. \$b Safārat (Great Britain) \$x Siege, 1980
- 110 2 \$a Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development \$x Economic assistance
- 110 2 \$a Palacio Presidencial (Havana, Cuba) \$x Siege, 1957
- 110 2 \$a United Nations \$x Peacekeeping forces
- 110 1 \$a United States. \$b Air Force \$x Combat controllers



### **111: Meeting Name**

The valid first indicator values are 1 (jurisdiction name) and 2 (name in direct order). The second indicator is blank.

Conference and meeting names and formal names of some kinds of events (e.g., competitions, contests, exhibitions, expeditions, fairs, festivals, parades, sporting events--see SCM H 1592 sec. 2 for a complete list) are established through NACO and may not be proposed via SACO. Headings for these types of events that were established in the subject authority file per provisions in force prior to August 1996 (see SCM H 1592 background and sec. 3) should be converted to name headings in the name authority file according to the procedures in LCRI 24.7 and 24.8 when these headings are needed in new cataloging. After establishing the name heading, a proposal should be submitted to delete the subject authority record. SACO participants that are not also NACO participants may contact CPSO or a NACO library to request the creation of the name authority record.

Events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal names but are commonly referred to by generic terms, or acquire names after the fact (e.g., accidents, battles, bombings, natural disasters, strikes, trials--see SCM H 1592 sec. 1 for a complete list), are established as subject headings tagged 150.

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established conference headings (see SCM H 1095 and H 1105 and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for conference name/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples of meeting names with non-free-floating subdivisions:

111 2 \$a America's Cup \$x Records  
111 2 \$a Super Bowl \$x Records

Examples of existing subject headings that should be converted to name headings tagged 111 when needed for new cataloging:

150 \$a Australian Open Tennis Championships, Australia  
110 2 \$a Bonite Expedition, 1836-1837  
150 \$a Coca-Cola Cup (Soccer)  
150 \$a Golden Gloves Tournament  
150 \$a Great Circus Parade, Milwaukee, Wis.  
150 \$a Hatch Chile Festival, Hatch, N.M.  
150 \$a National Peace Essay Contest  
150 \$a Orange Bowl, Miami, Fla. (Football game)  
150 \$a Tour Du Pont (Bicycle race)

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **130: Uniform Title**

The first indicator is blank and the second indicator should always be 0 (initial articles are always omitted in uniform titles).

Uniform titles are always established through NACO and may not be proposed through SACO. SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established uniform titles for literary and sacred works (see SCM H 1095, H 1155.8, H 1188, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for uniform title/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

Examples of uniform title headings with non-free-floating subdivisions:

- 130 0 \$a Bhagavadgītā \$x Relation to the Bible
- 130 0 \$a Book of Mormon \$x Relation to the Bible
- 130 0 \$a Bible \$x In motion pictures
- 130 0 \$a Bible \$v Parodies, imitations, etc.
- 130 0 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Isaiah \$x Quotations in the Book of Mormon
- 130 0 \$a Dead Sea scrolls \$v Quotations
- 130 0 \$a Dead Sea scrolls \$x Relation to the New Testament
- 130 0 \$a Koran \$x History of Koranic events
- 130 0 \$a Tripitaka \$x Copying
- 130 0 \$a Vedas \$x Historicity
- 130 0 \$a Vedas. \$p Ṛgveda \$x Recitation

## **150: Topical Term**

No indicators are used in headings coded 150.

The subject authority file consists primarily of topical headings coded with MARC 21 tag 150. There are no headings tagged 150 in the name authority file. Tag 150 encompasses a wide array of concepts and phenomena as well as headings for proper-named entities that are not capable of authorship and are needed for subject rather than descriptive access points. Some types of structures and events are coded 110 or 111 while others are coded 150. In cases of doubt, consult SCM H 405 (the "Division of the World" list) and H 1592. Examples of the types of topical headings:

### **Concepts, phenomena, and processes**

- 150 \$a Air pressure
- 150 \$a Cyberterrorism
- 150 \$a Fishes \$x Boning
- 150 \$a Housekeeping
- 150 \$a Marijuana abuse
- 150 \$a Meadows \$x Fertilization
- 150 \$a Ocean color
- 150 \$a Resort development
- 150 \$a Sexual consent

### **Disciplines and fields of learning**

- 150 \$a Astronomy, Korean
- 150 \$a Crow philosophy
- 150 \$a Equine dentistry
- 150 \$a Neurovirology
- 150 \$a Solar-terrestrial physics

### **Types of organizations and industries**

- 150 \$a Airport retailing
- 150 \$a Biotechnology libraries
- 150 \$a Community development credit unions
- 150 \$a Gay motorcycle clubs
- 150 \$a Internet entertainment industry
- 150 \$a Sea urchin fisheries

### **Types of objects and structures, including branded merchandise**

- 150 \$a Arenas
- 150 \$a Ceramics factories
- 150 \$a ENIAC (Computer)

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 150 \$a Mummified animals
- 150 \$a Pneumatic drills
- 150 \$a Toyota 4Runner sport utility vehicle
- 150 \$a Zambonis (Trademark)

### **Types of geographic and geologic features, including man-made features**

- 150 \$a Aquatic parks and reserves
- 150 \$a Cirques (Glacial landforms)
- 150 \$a Demonstration forests
- 150 \$a Fish management areas
- 150 \$a Planetary volcanoes
- 150 \$a Vernal pools

### **Classes of persons, including ethnic, Indian, religious, and national groups**

- 150 \$a African American women tap dancers
- 150 \$a Boaters (Persons)
- 150 \$a Chelan Indians
- 150 \$a Children of teenage mothers
- 150 \$a Ex-gamblers
- 150 \$a Malians
- 150 \$a Primitive Methodists
- 150 \$a Semelai (Malaysian people)
- 150 \$a Shipwreck victims
- 150 \$a Stutterers
- 150 \$a Zuni boys

### **Proper or common names for chemicals, materials, substances, organisms, breeds, diseases, etc.**

- 150 \$a Brazilian pepper tree
- 150 \$a Cat-scratch disease
- 150 \$a Dairy substitutes
- 150 \$a Gamma-hydroxybutyrate
- 150 \$a Renibacterium salmoninarum
- 150 \$a Taffeta
- 150 \$a Tanzanite
- 150 \$a Tomato sauces
- 150 \$a Tonkinese cat

### **Names of languages, including artificial and computer languages**

- 150 \$a CALEX (Computer program language)
- 150 \$a Kwatay language
- 150 \$a Quenya (Artificial language)

- 150 \$a Swedish Sign Language
- 150 \$a Urdu language \$x Technical Urdu

**Types of publications and form/genre headings for literature, arts, music, etc.**

According to the MARC 21 authority format, headings for form and genre (i.e., what a bibliographic resource *is*, *contains*, or is an *example of*, rather than what it is *about*) are tagged 155. However, LC authority records for such terms are currently tagged 150. LC has plans to implement 155 in the future, but no date has yet been set. SACO proposals may be made for form and genre headings, but presently they must be tagged 150.

- 150 \$a Ash Wednesday sermons
- 150 \$a Biographical television programs
- 150 \$a Bisexuals' writings
- 150 \$a Electronic journals
- 150 \$a Equatorial Guinean poetry (Spanish)
- 150 \$a Erotic videos
- 150 \$a Oi music
- 150 \$a Painting, Lithuanian
- 150 \$a Piccolo and xylophone music
- 150 \$a Travelogues (Motion pictures, television, etc.)
- 150 \$a Zombie films

**Names of days, months, years, etc.; holidays and commemorations; special days, months, years, decades, etc.**

- 150 \$a International Year of Older Persons, 1999
- 150 \$a National Breast Cancer Awareness Month
- 150 \$a Nineteen ninety-seven, A.D.
- 150 \$a Pulaski Day
- 150 \$a United Nations Decade for Human Rights Education, 1995-2004

**Events established according to subject cataloging conventions, including accidents, battles, bombings, disasters, epidemics, riots, strikes, trials, wars**

- 150 \$a Empire Zinc Company Strike, Hanover, N.M., 1950-1951
- 150 \$a Great Stink, London, England, 1858
- 150 \$a Hurricane Pauline, 1997
- 150 \$a Indian Ocean Tsunami, 2004
- 150 \$a Krusi, Battle of, Krusi, Montenegro, 1796
- 150 \$a Loma Prieta Earthquake, Calif., 1989
- 150 \$a September 11 Terrorist Attacks, 2001
- 150 \$a Swissair Flight 111 Crash, 1998
- 150 \$a Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
- 150 \$a United States Embassy Bombing, Nairobi, Kenya, 1998
- 150 \$a Ware Mutiny, Ware, Hertfordshire, England, 1647

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

### **Deities; mythological, legendary, and fictitious characters and places**

- 150 \$a Basilisks (Mythical animals)
- 150 \$a Bluebeard (Legendary character)
- 150 \$a Bunyips
- 150 \$a Captain Underpants (Fictitious character)
- 150 \$a Corleone family (Fictitious characters)
- 150 \$a Fountain of youth (Legendary place)
- 150 \$a Kia (Fictitious character : Wooding)
- 150 \$a Quirinus (Roman deity)
- 150 \$a Shangri-La (Imaginary place)

### **Named animals**

- 150 \$a Ben (Fox)
- 150 \$a Benji (Dog)
- 150 \$a Man o' War (Race horse)
- 150 \$a Woo (Monkey)

### **Eponyms**

- 150 \$a Behçet's disease
- 150 \$a Churg-Strauss syndrome
- 150 \$a Kleinian groups
- 150 \$a Matschie's tree kangaroo
- 150 \$a Rayleigh flow
- 150 \$a Rubik's Clock

### **Named tests and standards**

- 150 \$a Childhood Autism Rating Scale
- 150 \$a College Major Interest Inventory
- 150 \$a G-MAP (Personality test)
- 150 \$a International Standard Bibliographic Description for Electronic Resources
- 150 \$a Key Stage 3 National Tests
- 150 \$a Myers-Briggs Type Indicator

### **Named structures and other non-corporate named entities**

- 150 \$a Astoria Column (Astoria, Or.)
- 150 \$a Charles F. Millspaugh Hall (Field Museum of Natural History)
- 150 \$a Galleria delle statue (Museo Pio-Clementino, Vatican City)
- 150 \$a Kiss & Tell (Group of artists)
- 150 \$a Oliver Max Gardner Award
- 150 \$a Peace Arch (Blaine, Wash., and White Rock, B.C.)
- 150 \$a Premio Nacional de Artes Plásticas (Cuba)

- 150 \$a Primal Rage (Game)
- 150 \$a Tomb of the Patriarchs (Hebron)

**Political, social, religious, artistic, and literary movements and schools of thought**

- 150 \$a Anti-feminism
- 150 \$a Anti-rape movement
- 150 \$a Black Arts movement
- 150 \$a Durkheimian school of sociology
- 150 \$a Lithuanian resistance movement, 1944-1953
- 150 \$a Lvov-Warsaw school of philosophy
- 150 \$a Neoromanticism (Music)
- 150 \$a Taos school of art
- 150 \$a Ultraism (Literary movement)

The form in which topical headings are established varies. Some of the possibilities include:

**Simple and compound nouns**

- 150 \$a Aperitifs
- 150 \$a Chintzware
- 150 \$a Pollinators
- 150 \$a Recitative
- 150 \$a Redwoods

**Nouns with adjectives**

- 150 \$a Best friends
- 150 \$a Fascist aesthetics
- 150 \$a Introduced fishes
- 150 \$a Miniature teddy bears
- 150 \$a Pacific Islander American legislators
- 150 \$a Pet shop owners
- 150 \$a Surprise birthday parties

**Phrases and compounds**

- 150 \$a Arts and the poor
- 150 \$a Cannibalism in motion pictures
- 150 \$a Chernobyl Nuclear Accident, Chornobyl', Ukraine, 1986, in art
- 150 \$a Church work with ex-convicts
- 150 \$a Firearms and crime
- 150 \$a Gay man-heterosexual woman relationships on television
- 150 \$a Hockey for girls
- 150 \$a Homophobia in schools

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 150 \$a Literature rejected for publication
- 150 \$a Rattlesnakes as pets
- 150 \$a Space flight to Saturn

### **Qualified terms**

Parenthetical qualifiers are used for a variety of purposes, including to distinguish homonyms, to remove ambiguity or provide elucidation, to indicate proper names, and to provide the geographic location of a structure or battle. See SCM H 357 for further instructions on when qualifiers should be used.

- 150 \$a Abe (African people)
- 150 \$a ASCII (Character set)
- 150 \$a Cookery (Shad)
- 150 \$a Eastern and Oriental Express (Express train)
- 150 \$a Eld (The Swedish word)
- 150 \$a English language \$v Conversation and phrase books (for accountants)
- 150 \$a Firewalls (Computer security)
- 150 \$a Flambards (England : Imaginary place)
- 150 \$a Merlot (Wine)
- 150 \$a Katharina (Mollusks)
- 150 \$a Rachel's Tomb (Bethlehem)

### **Inverted terms**

SCM H 306 provides background and guidelines for formulating new topical headings in direct or inverted form. Topical headings qualified by languages, nationalities, or ethnic groups are established in inverted form with exceptions for language and literature headings and U.S. ethnic groups and Indian groups that are noted in H 306. Inverted headings are also made for subjects qualified by time period and by artistic or musical style, and for fossils (see SCM H 1332 sec. 10), battles (H 1285), certain geographics (H 690), some fictitious and legendary characters (H 1795), and royal houses, etc. (H 1574).

- 150 \$a Baskets, Iban
- 150 \$a Boats, Ancient
- 150 \$a Feathers, Fossil
- 150 \$a Folk songs, Celtic
- 150 \$a Genre painting, Renaissance
- 150 \$a Martinići, Battle of, Martinići, Montenegro, 1796
- 150 \$a National characteristics, Peruvian
- 150 \$a People with disabilities, Writings of, Russian
- 150 \$a Philosophy, Mongolian
- 150 \$a Sandiego, Carmen (Fictitious character)
- 150 \$a Transportation, Prehistoric



**Headings with subdivisions**

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established topical headings (see SCM H 1095-H 1145.5 (lists of general categories), H 1146-H 1200 (pattern heading lists), examples Z and AA on pp. 76-78 of this manual, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for topical heading/free-floating subdivision and topical heading/geographic subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

- 150 \$a Advertising \$x Baking powder
- 150 \$a Animals \$x Longevity
- 150 \$a Art, Chinese \$x Western influences
- 150 \$a Australian states \$x Politics and government
- 150 \$a Business enterprises \$x Size
- 150 \$a Chinese provinces \$x Economic conditions
- 150 \$a Church history \$y 2nd century
- 150 \$a Cookery, Tanzanian \$x Zanzibari style
- 150 \$a Corporal punishment of children \$x Religious aspects
- 150 \$a Digital images \$x Watermarking
- 150 \$a Dispersing agents \$x Effectiveness \$x Monitoring
- 150 \$a English language \$v Conversation and phrase books (for caregivers)
- 150 \$a Food \$x Vitamin E content
- 150 \$a French language \$y 17th century
- 150 \$a Indians of Central America \$x First contact with Europeans
- 150 \$a Indigenous peoples \$x Urban residence
- 150 \$a International trade \$x Effect of terrorism on
- 150 \$a Kangaroo meat \$x Quality
- 150 \$a Knives \$x Sharpening
- 150 \$a Paleoclimatology \$y Cretaceous
- 150 \$a Pensions \$x Effect of deflation on
- 150 \$a Seawater \$x Amino acid content
- 150 \$a Theaters \$x Restrooms
- 150 \$a Turkish poetry \$y 17th century
- 150 \$a Wetland restoration \$x Law and legislation

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **151: Geographic Name**

No indicators are used in headings coded 151.

Geographic entities are tagged 151 in authority records. Non-jurisdictional geographic entities are established according to subject cataloging rules (see SCM H 690-H 1055) and reside in LCSH. Headings for jurisdictions are established by NACO libraries in name authority records according to descriptive cataloging rules (AACR2). Jurisdictional headings may not be submitted via SACO.

Consult SCM H 405 to determine whether a named entity is considered geographic and coded 151 and whether it is established as a name authority or as a subject heading.

Consult SCM H 690 sec. 3-9 for instructions on when to use the English or vernacular form of a geographic name, how to arrange the elements of a name, how to treat abbreviations and initial articles, transliteration, when to capitalize, and what to do with conflicts involving geographic names. Consult H 810 for instructions on qualifying geographic headings.

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings needed as subjects should be proposed through SACO. Examples of non-jurisdictional geographic headings:

#### *Entities wholly within one jurisdiction*

- 151 \$a Bjelopavlići Plain (Montenegro)
- 151 \$a Coorong, The (S. Aust.)
- 151 \$a Dhoo, River (Isle of Man)
- 151 \$a Dzūkijos Nacionalinis parkas (Lithuania)
- 151 \$a Elkharas Site (Turkmenistan)
- 151 \$a Erie, Lake, Coast (Ohio)
- 151 \$a Farafra Oasis (Egypt)
- 151 \$a Glenlivet, Braes of (Scotland)
- 151 \$a Great Blackfeet Reservation (Mont.)
- 151 \$a Idarado Mine (Colo.)
- 151 \$a Kostromskaŕ taezhnaŕ biologicheskaŕ stanŕiŕ Region (Russia)
- 151 \$a Lihou Reef National Nature Reserve (Coral Sea Islands)
- 151 \$a Malawali Island (Sabah)
- 151 \$a Mellen Street Interchange (Interstate 5)
- 151 \$a Močovice Site (Czech Republic)
- 151 \$a Prydz Bay (Antarctica)
- 151 \$a Raritan River, South Branch, Watershed (N.J.)
- 151 \$a Seattle-Tacoma International Airport Region (Wash.)
- 151 \$a Þingvellir þjóðgarður (Iceland)
- 151 \$a Triangular Forum (Pompeii)

*Entities wholly within one jurisdiction, but conflict exists between two or more entities with same name*

- 151 \$a Cedar Creek (Candler County-Evans County, Ga.)
- 151 \$a Fauntleroy Park (Seattle, Wash. : Barton Street)
- 151 \$a Fort Spokane (Lincoln County, Wash. : Fort)
- 151 \$a Honey Creek (Walworth County and Racine County, Wis. : River)
- 151 \$a Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County, Tex.)
- 151 \$a Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture, Laos)
- 151 \$a Rock Island (Ill. : Island)
- 151 \$a Skaftö (Västra Götalands län, Sweden : Island)

*Entities in two jurisdictions*

- 151 \$a Amistad Reservoir (Tex. and Mexico)
- 151 \$a Black Mountains (Wales and England)
- 151 \$a Calabar-Ugep-Ikom Road (Nigeria and Cameroon)
- 151 \$a Kicking Horse Pass (Alta. and B.C.)
- 151 \$a Knife Lake (Minn. and Ont.)
- 151 \$a Walla Walla Valley (Or. and Wash.)

*Entities in more than two jurisdictions or no jurisdiction*

- 151 \$a Altai-Sayan Ecoregion
- 151 \$a Axial Seamount
- 151 \$a California Current
- 151 \$a Jefferson National Forest
- 151 \$a Lewis and Clark Bicycle Trail
- 151 \$a Mandab, Strait of
- 151 \$a Steens Fault Zone
- 151 \$a United States Highway 26

*Entities qualified by a directional qualifier*

- 151 \$a Australia, Northern
- 151 \$a Nigeria, Southwest
- 151 \$a Ontario, Eastern
- 151 \$a Queensland, South East
- 151 \$a Siberia, Northeastern (Russia)

*Entities qualified by city or cities*

- 151 \$a 118th Avenue (Edmonton, Alta.)
- 151 \$a Ambassador Bridge (Detroit, Mich., and Windsor, Ont.)
- 151 \$a Antonia Fortress (Jerusalem)
- 151 \$a Cabrillo National Monument (San Diego, Calif.)

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 151 \$a Donald L. Garrity Japanese Garden (Ellensburg, Wash.)
- 151 \$a Dunoon Pier (Dunoon, Scotland)
- 151 \$a Fisherman's Wharf (San Francisco, Calif.)
- 151 \$a Largo de São Francisco de Paula (Rio de Janeiro, Brazil)
- 151 \$a Mervyn King Ridge Trail (Johannesburg, South Africa)
- 151 \$a Rainier Avenue (Seattle and Renton, Wash.)
- 151 \$a Ruins, The (Indianapolis, Ind.)
- 151 \$a Timucuan Ecological and Historic Preserve (Jacksonville, Fla.)
- 151 \$a Westerscheldetunnel (Goes and Terneuzen, Netherlands)

### *Extraterrestrial entities*

- 151 \$a Bacchus (Asteroid)
- 151 \$a Ganymede (Satellite)
- 151 \$a Halley's comet
- 151 \$a Horsehead Nebula
- 151 \$a Jupiter (Planet)
- 151 \$a Kuiper Belt
- 151 \$a Lavinia Planitia (Venus)
- 151 \$a Mare Orientale (Moon)
- 151 \$a Nova Persei 1901
- 151 \$a P Cygni
- 151 \$a Planum Australe (Mars)
- 151 \$a Triangulum Galaxy

### *Entities qualified to explain the nature of the name*

- 151 \$a 9969 Braille (Asteroid)
- 151 \$a Callisto (Satellite)
- 151 \$a Hermitage (Tayside, Scotland : Trail)
- 151 \$a K2 (Pakistan : Mountain)
- 151 \$a M81 (Galaxy)
- 151 \$a Midea (Extinct city)
- 151 \$a Saint Ives (England : Park)

## **Headings with subdivisions**

SACO proposals may be made to establish non-free-floating subdivisions under established geographic headings (see SCM H 1095, H 1140-H 1145.5, and examples below). Subject authority records are also created for geographic heading/free-floating subdivision combinations that are needed as broader or related term references on proposed headings (see SCM H 200 sec. 8c), but such "backdoor headings" need not be proposed by SACO participants.

- 151 \$a Afghanistan \$x Politics and government \$y 2001-
- 151 \$a Calais (France) \$x History \$y Siege, 1346-1347

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

- 151 \$a China \$x Foreign relations \$y 618-907
- 151 \$a Eros (Asteroid) \$v Globes
- 151 \$a Europa (Satellite) \$x Geology
- 151 \$a Fortaleza de San Carlos (Maracaibo, Venezuela) \$x Bombardment, 1903
- 151 \$a France \$x Intellectual life \$x American influences
- 151 \$a Greece \$x Social conditions \$y 1453-1821
- 151 \$a Holy Roman Empire \$x History \$y Otto III, 983-1002
- 151 \$a Macau (China : Special Administrative Region) \$x History \$y Transfer of  
Sovereignty from Portugal, 1999
- 151 \$a Mediterranean Region \$x Economic conditions \$y 1945-
- 151 \$a Mars (Planet) \$x Gravity \$x Seasonal variations
- 151 \$a Rome \$x Economic conditions \$y 30 B.C.-476 A.D.
- 151 \$a Uranus (Planet) \$x Satellites \$v Ephemerides
- 151 \$a Slovenia \$x History \$y Revolution, 1848-1849
- 151 \$a Sudan \$x History \$y Darfur Conflict, 2003-
- 151 \$a Venus (Planet) \$x Meteorology
- 151 \$a Vietnam \$x Civilization \$x Confucian influences
- 151 \$a West Indies \$x Civilization \$x Cuban influences

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **260: General See Reference**

This field is used for general see references. Its use is described in SCM H 374. A general see reference is a use reference made not to specific individual headings but to a category of subject headings or subdivisions. Records for general see references are reference records rather than heading records and, in addition to the presence of a 260 field, may be identified by value **b** or **c** in fixed field 008/09 (Kind of Record).

Both indicators in 260 are blank. Subfield \$i is used for explanatory text and subfield \$a contains the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. The term or terms referred from are given in a 150 field. In addition to the examples below, a full MARC example of a general see reference authority record may be seen in the section on fixed field 008/09 (p. 94).

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 150 | \$a Areas   |
| 260 | \$i subject headings for specific types of areas, e.g. \$a Earthquake zones; Health service areas; Pedestrian areas; Wine districts                   |
| 150 | \$a Characters and characteristics in music   |
| 260 | \$i subdivision \$a Characters \$i under headings for dramatic musical compositions, e.g. \$a Operas--Characters                                      |
| 150 | \$a Environmental conditions  |
| 260 | \$i subdivision \$a Environmental conditions \$i under names of countries, cities, etc.   |
| 150 | \$a Iraqi literature  |
| 260 | \$i headings for Arabic literature or specific forms of Arabic literature with subdivision Iraq, e.g. \$a Arabic literature--Iraq; Arabic poetry—Iraq |
| 150 | \$a Myanmaran . . .   |
| 260 | \$i subject headings beginning with or qualified by the word \$a Burmese, \$i e.g. \$a Burmese literature; Art, Burmese                               |
| 150 | \$a Same-gender . . .   |
| 260 | \$i subject headings beginning with the words \$a Gay, Lesbian, Same-sex, \$i and \$a Single-sex  |
| 150 | \$a Urologic . . .  |
| 260 | \$i headings beginning with the word \$a Urological, \$i e.g. \$a Urological emergencies  |

Note: In general see references, the term in the 150 is not a subject heading authorized for use. Only the terms referred to in the 260 are authorized. In the first example above, **Areas** is not a valid heading for use in bibliographic records. The reference in the 260 field instructs catalogers instead to use headings established for specific types of areas,

and gives some examples. In the third example above, **Environmental conditions** is only authorized for use as a topical subdivision, not as a main subject heading. General see references from non-used variant forms of national and ethnic adjectival qualifiers and from variant spellings or forms of common words used in several headings are shown in the final three examples above. The non-used form is followed by three dots (ellipses) to refer to any term that begins with that non-used form.

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **360: General See Also Reference**

This field is used for general see also references. Its use is described in SCM H 371. A general see also reference is a reference made from a heading not to specific individual headings but to an entire category of headings or subdivisions, frequently listing one or more individual headings or subdivisions by way of example. Subfield \$i is used for explanatory text and subfield \$a contains the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. Both indicators in 360 are blank.

Current LC policy is to provide specific broader term references in preference to a single general see also reference whenever possible. General see also references are now made only in the following circumstances:

- To refer from a generic heading to a free-floating subdivision. Examples:

150 \$a Human-animal relationships

360 \$i subdivision \$a Effect of human beings on \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

150 \$a Installation of equipment

360 \$i subdivision \$a Installation \$i under types of equipment

- To refer from a subject heading to a category of subject headings, or to a type of name heading that is normally not included in the subject authority file. Examples:

150 \$a Football stadiums

360 \$i names of individual football stadiums

150 \$a Forest insects

360 \$i individual insects and groups of insects, e.g. \$a Pine-moth; Sawflies

- To refer from a generic heading to a group of headings that begin with the same word. Example:

150 \$a Science

360 \$i headings beginning with the word \$a Scientific; \$i and subdivision \$a Science \$i under ethnic groups and individual wars, e.g. \$a World War, 1939-1945--  
Science



**4XX: See From Tracings (Used For Cross-References)**

4XX fields are used to record cross-references from forms not used to the authorized heading in 1XX. SCM H 373 provides detailed information on "used for" references and when to include them in SACO proposals. Generally speaking, used for references are made for alternative equivalent terms and phrases (synonyms), and abbreviations, acronyms, etc., of the form selected as the heading. They are also made for inverted forms of significant words in a phrase, and from the straight form of a phrase when the heading itself is inverted. When a subject heading is changed from one form to another, the previous form of the heading is usually retained in the authority record as a linking reference, with subfield \$w coded **nne** (earlier form of heading), unless it normalizes to the same form as the revised heading. The latter situation would occur if the only change being made were one of capitalization, addition or deletion of diacritics, or addition or deletion of a hyphen. Multiple used for references should be given in alphabetical order. Examples:

- 100 1 \$a McCartney, Paul \$x Death hoax
- 450 \$a Death hoax of Paul McCartney
- 450 \$a McCartney death rumor
- 450 \$a Paul is dead hoax
- 450 \$a Paul McCartney death hoax
- 450 \$a Paul McCartney is dead (Hoax)
  
- 100 3 \$a Umayyad dynasty
- 400 3 \$a Banū Umaiya
- 400 3 \$a Banū →Umajja dynasty
- 400 3 \$a Banū Umayya dynasty
- 450 \$w nne \$a Omayyads
- 450 \$w nne \$a Omayyads in Spain
- 400 3 \$a Omeyyad dynasty
- 400 3 \$a Ommiad dynasty
- 400 3 \$a Umaiya
- 400 3 \$a Umayyads
  
- 110 2 \$a Arvfurstens palats (Stockholm, Sweden)
- 410 2 \$a Arfprinsens palais (Stockholm, Sweden)
- 410 2 \$a Palace of the Prince Royal (Stockholm, Sweden)
  
- 130 0 \$a Bible \$x In motion pictures
- 450 \$a Biblical themes in motion pictures
  
- 150 \$a Abe (African people)
- 450 \$a Abbe (African people)
- 450 \$a Abbey (African people)
- 450 \$a Abi (African people)
- 450 \$a Aby (African people)

***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 150 \$a Ash Wednesday sermons
- 450 \$a Ash Wednesday \$v Sermons
  
- 150 \$a Marinas \$x Fees
- 450 \$a Marina fees
- 450 \$a Marina rates
- 450 \$a Marinas \$x Rates
  
- 150 \$a National characteristics, Peruvian
- 450 \$a Peruvian national characteristics
  
- 150 \$a Piccolo and xylophone music
- 450 \$a Xylophone and piccolo music
  
- 151 \$a Madhupur Jungle (Bangladesh)
- 451 \$a Garh Gazali (Bangladesh)
- 451 \$a Modhupur Forest (Bangladesh)
- 451 \$a Modhupur Garh Forest (Bangladesh)
  
- 151 \$a Mars (Planet) \$x Volcanism
- 450 \$a Martian volcanism
  
- 151 \$a Midea (Extinct city)
- 451 \$w nne \$a Midea Site (Greece)
- 451 \$a Midea (Extinct city)
- 451 \$a Persepolis (Greece : Extinct city)
  
- 151 \$a Parque Nacional Iguazú (Argentina)
- 451 \$a Iguazu National Park (Argentina)

**5XX: See Also From Tracings (See Also Cross-References)**

5XX fields are used to create see also references. These may be nonhierarchical references (also called related term references) or they may be hierarchical, referring the user to a broader term in a hierarchy. Only related and broader terms are explicitly recorded in authority records. Narrower terms are not recorded in subject authorities, but they may be generated in online systems and displays through the hierarchical broader term coding. SCM H 370 provides detailed information on see also references. SCM H 375 describes LCSH policy for Topic--Place broader term references.

All 5XX headings in authority records must also have their own separate authority records (coded as 1XX). If a 5XX heading in a SACO proposal does not already have its own authority record, a separate proposal for it must also be submitted, unless it is a backdoor heading (i.e., a heading consisting of a main heading combined with either a free-floating or geographic subdivision). CPSO staff in the Subject Heading Editorial Team (SHed) will create authority records for backdoor headings if the SACO library does not propose them.

If a proposed heading is conceptually a broader term to a heading that already exists in LCSH, a change proposal to add the new heading as a BT on the existing heading must accompany the proposal for the new heading.

Related term references are made in order to link two headings that are neither broader nor narrower than each other. The reference from one to the other must be made on both authority records. This means that a SACO proposal for a new heading might also require a change proposal for another already existing authority record. LC has restrictive policies in place on making related term references. SCM H 370 provides instructions on when making related term references is and is not permissible.

Not all headings require broader term references. The SCM calls these "orphan" headings and lists the types of situations in which a heading without a broader term is permitted.

When a heading has both broader term and related term references, all the broader terms should be given first, in alphabetical order, followed by all the related terms in alphabetical order.

Subfield \$w is used to code broader term references. The value **g** in subfield \$w indicates a broader term. Subfield \$w is not used for related term references.

Examples:

100 3 \$a Lopez family  
500 3 \$a Lopes de Mendonça family  
500 3 \$a Pérez-López y López-Silvero family  
500 3 \$a Restrepo family

***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 100 1 \$a Presley, Elvis, \$d 1935-1977 \$x Sightings  
550 \$w g \$a Apparitions
- 100 3 \$a Umayyad dynasty  
551 \$w g \$a Islamic Empire \$x Kings and rulers
- 110 2 \$a Grady Gammage Memorial Auditorium (Tempe, Ariz.)  
550 \$w g \$a Auditoriums \$z Arizona  
550 \$w g \$a College buildings \$z Arizona
- 110 2 \$a United Nations \$x Peacekeeping forces  
550 \$w g \$a Peacekeeping forces  
510 2 \$w g \$a United Nations \$x Armed Forces
- 111 2 \$a Super Bowl \$x Records  
550 \$w g \$a Sports records
- 150 \$a Abe (African people)  
550 \$w g \$a Ethnology \$z Côte d'Ivoire
- 150 \$a Coptic chants  
550 \$w g \$a Chants  
510 2 \$w g \$a Coptic Church \$x Liturgy
- 150 \$a Exploitation films  
550 \$w g \$a Motion pictures  
550 \$a Sensationalism in motion pictures
- 150 \$a Krusi, Battle of, Krusi, Montenegro, 1796  
551 \$w g \$a Montenegro \$x History \$y Peter I, 1782-1830
- 150 \$a Sensationalism in motion pictures  
550 \$w g \$a Motion pictures  
550 \$a Exploitation films
- 151 \$a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Arkansas  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Oklahoma  
551 \$w g \$a Ozark Mountains
- 151 \$a Calais (France) \$x History \$y Siege, 1346-1347  
550 \$w g \$a Sieges \$z France
- 151 \$a France \$x Intellectual life \$x American influences  
551 \$w g \$a United States \$x Civilization

**667: Nonpublic General Note**

Field 667 is used to record general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The note is "nonpublic" because it is not intended to display to catalog users. Generally 667 notes are used in subject authority records for instructions to catalogers. Both indicators in 667 are blank.

667 is most commonly used in subject authority records to state that a geographic subject heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision (see SCM H 836). This applies to headings for celestial bodies and to features within cities (e.g., plazas, circles, squares, monuments, parks, gardens, streets, bridges, tunnels, archaeological sites, etc.). In cases such as this, SACO proposals should contain a 667 note stating: "This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision." If a geographic subject heading *is* valid for use as a geographic subdivision, instead of a 667 note there should be a 781 field showing the form of the heading when used as a subdivision (see p. 150).

Examples:

- 151 \$a 118th Avenue (Edmonton, Alta.)  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 151 \$a Donald L. Garrity Japanese Garden (Ellensburg, Wash.)  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 151 \$a Old Dorchester State Park (Summerville, S.C.)  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 151 \$a Piazza del Duomo (Lecce, Italy)  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 151 \$a Supernova 1054  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **670: Source Data Found**

Key Documentation: SCM H 203

The 670 field is used to supply citations to sources used to establish the heading and any cross-references to it. Both indicators in 670 fields are blank. The first 670 is usually used to cite the work being cataloged and the citation of it is preceded by the phrase **Work cat.:**. The additional sources that were consulted in carrying out authority research are cited separately in other 670s.

Generally, SACO proposals must contain at least one citation for the work being cataloged and/or sources consulted to support a subject heading proposal. SCM H 203 provides general information on citing sources. The SACO website has a list of useful Web-based reference sources (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/resources.html>).

Before February 2000, H 203 contained lists of commonly consulted sources along with recommended abbreviations to cite in proposals. In 2000 LC revised H 203 and deleted these lists, but the abbreviations will be found in authority records established prior to this date, and catalogers familiar with them will likely continue to use them for some time to come. Examples of abbreviated source titles are included below and can also be seen in the subject authority proposals found elsewhere in this manual. Some of the most frequently abbreviated sources are *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged* (Web. 3), *The Columbia Gazetteer of the World* (Columbia gaz.), *The World Book Encyclopedia* (World Book), and *The New Encyclopaedia Britannica* (Britannica). The Britannica's *Micropaedia* and *Macropaedia* sections are cited as Britannica Micro. and Britannica Macro., respectively.

A citation should provide the main entry, if any, title proper (or title and subtitle if the subtitle furnishes additional information), and date(s) of publication in the form found in the publication, distribution, etc. area of the bibliographic record for that source. Do not include brackets around dates, but do give any symbols ("c" for copyright, "p" for sound recording copyright, question marks, and hyphens) that would be in the bibliographic record. If the publication has multiple dates, record them. If the bibliographic record has both Gregorian and non-Gregorian dates, record only the Gregorian date.

For personal author main entries, initials may be used instead of full forenames. Titles may be abridged or words in them abbreviated as long as the information is clear and the source can be easily identified. Note that citation practice for SACO proposals varies from NACO practices: main entries are generally not given in name authority citations. Remote electronic resources may be cited in a variety of ways, depending on the type of resource (see below for examples).

If the source being cited is a nonbook format, a general material designation (GMD) or an abbreviated form of GMD may be added after the title and before the date. This is not required, but it is sometimes useful to identify the format of the material being cited. Use [SR] for sound recordings, [VR] for videorecordings, [MP] for motion pictures, [MF] for

microforms, and [CM] for maps and other cartographic material (note: authority records may be found in which the obsolete GMD [map] was used). The designation [CF] for computer files may be seen in some authority records, but since Chapter 9 of AACR2 has been renamed "Electronic Resources," new authority records should use [ER] if the addition of a GMD would be useful.

When citing a serial, provide the volume number or date of the issue(s) consulted.

- 670 \$a Biol. & agr. index: \$b v. 38
- 670 \$a New York times index, 1984
- 670 \$a Educ. index, May 1984
- 670 \$a Pharmaceutical trends, Jan. 1978: \$b p. 2

The citation itself is included in subfield \$a of the 670. In some cases, all that is needed is the citation for a source, because the information justifying the subject heading proposal is included in the title of that source. In other cases, information found within a source must be supplied. In 670s, the location of the information found in the source and the information itself is included in subfield \$b.

In citations, a colon is added following the date(s) of publication if a specific location within a source is specified. Specific locations are omitted if (a) the source being cited is alphabetically arranged *and* (b) the heading being proposed, or a reference to it, is found in its normal alphabetical location in the source. Specific locations may also be omitted if the heading being proposed is included in the title of a source and no other information from within that source is needed as additional support or justification for the proposal or for variant terms found elsewhere in the source. If a Web page or other electronic resource is cited and the information is taken from the first screen viewed when connecting to that page, the specific location can also usually be omitted.

Location information is given first in subfield \$b, followed by the information found at that location enclosed in parentheses. Information may be paraphrased, or it may be quoted from the source.

When citing locations within a source, use standard terms and abbreviations such as:

t.p.	t.p. verso	map recto	map verso
jkt.	label	cover	p. 3 of cover
index	abstr.	introd.	pref.
p. xi	leaf 1	pp. 28-29	v. 4, t.p.
credits	container	insert	title screen
p. opp. t.p.	prelim. p.	home page	HTML header
p. 2 last group	PDF p. iii	table of contents p.	verso of image

Note that when the cover or any other source substitutes for the chief source, it should be cited as "t.p." Generally, if information comes from a specific page, cite the number of

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

the page (unless the specific location can be omitted as described above). Do not include brackets around inferred numbers.

If the source or information cited contains diacritics or other special characters that cannot be keyed on the Web proposal form or into an email proposal, substitute the name of the diacritic or character in parentheses in front of the letter to which it applies, e.g., Ban(macron)u (alif)Umajja for Banū →Umajja. **Appendix A, Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH** shows examples of this technique applied throughout a SACO proposal.

Examples:

### **Abbreviated Sources as Listed in SCM H 203 Prior to February 2000**

- 670 \$a Britannica Micro.: \$b v. 2, p. 244 (Biton and Cleobis; Biton also spelled Bito; sons of Cydippe, priestess of Hera; noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess)
- 670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (durian; also durion; Durio zibethinus)
- 670 \$a Web. geog. \$b (Ngorongoro Crater. Extinct volcanic crater, N. cen. Tanzania)
- 670 \$a Ruhlen world lang.: \$b p. 307 (Mundu, under Adamawa-Ubangian branch of Niger-Congo languages)

### **Printed Sources**

#### *Work being cataloged*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Yusupov, A. The Petroff defense, 1999.

#### *Alphabetically arranged source*

- 670 \$a Columbia gaz. \$b (Litchfield Hills, NW Conn., S extension of the Berkshires running E of Housatonic R., in NW Litchfield Co.)

#### *Location within source cited*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: The national artists of the Philippines, c1998: \$b p. xi (National Artist Award or Gawad Artista ng Bayan; est. 1972 to honor Filipinos who have made outstanding contributions to Philippine arts and letters)
- 670 \$a Gale encyc. of Native American tribes, c1998: \$b pp. 316-321 (Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)



*Multiple locations within source*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Diet and health in past animal populations, c2005: \$b pref. (animal palaeopathological and dietary studies) p. 1 (animal palaeopathology; palaeopathology as a sub-discipline within zooarchaeology) p. 7 (veterinary palaeopathology)
- 670 \$a New Grove dict. of mus. instr.: \$b v. 3, p. 501 (taiko; generic term for all Japanese drums; commonly applied only to cylindrical or barrel drums) v. 9, p. 519 (the taiko is a shallow barrel drum with two cowhide heads)

*Other title information included for clarification*

- 670 \$a Morris, D. Cool cats : the 100 cat breeds of the world, 1999: \$b p. 122 (Tonkinese cat; formerly called the Golden Siamese; short-haired American hybrid created by crossing Siamese and Burmese)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Los caminos al Río Magdalena : la frontera del Carare y del Opón, 1760-1860, 2000: \$b p. 15 (the region of the Opón) p. 139 (Opón River)

*Quoted information*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Hagberg, S. Between peace and justice : dispute settlement between Karaboro agriculturalists and Fulbe agro-pastoralists in Burkina Faso, 1998: \$b p. 19 ("The Karaboro, who consider themselves to belong to the large group of Senufo peoples ...") p. 103 ("The Karaboro are said to originate from Senufo country in the north of the territory of today's Ivory Coast ... The Karaboro generally refer to themselves as Kaye when speaking their own language, but as Karaboro in all other contexts.")

**Serials**

- 670 \$a Annual review of materials sci., v. 29: \$b p. 53 (Magnetic force microscopy is a special mode of noncontact operation of the scanning force microscope)
- 670 \$a Journal of magnetism and magnetic materials, Oct. 1991: \$b p. 263 (abstr.: Magnetic force microscopy (MFM) is a scanned probe technique for imaging microfields near surfaces of magnetic media)

**Nonbook Materials (Scores, Sound Recordings, Videorecordings, Cartographic Materials, Visual Resources)**

*Scores*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Smith, S. The night is never long, c1998 \$b (for piccolo and xylophone)

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Dinescu, V. Medrea : für Klarinette oder Bassklarinetten und Orgel, 1996?

*Sound Recordings*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Agrell, J. Konserter för flöjt och cembalo med stråkorkester [SR], p1979.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Panhuysen, P. Engines in power and love, 1992: \$b label (music performed by 5 matrix computer printers)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: The International Computer Music Association commission awards, 1994-96 [SR], p1997: \$b insert (Birdwing; for shakuhachi and tape)

*Videorecordings*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Return to the Dying rooms [VR], c1996: \$b accomp. documentation (infant girls; baby girls)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: The story of the Lacey V. Murrow Floating Bridge [VR], 1993 \$b (pontoon bridge in Seattle, largest floating bridge in the world; designed by Homer M. Hadley and state highway engineer Lacey V. Murrow, opened on July 2, 1940; a new floating bridge upgrade project was completed on Sept. 12, 1993, despite problems caused when portions of the old floating bridge were damaged by a severe storm in 1990)

*Cartographic Materials*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Geological Survey (U.S.). Geologic map of Callisto, 1997.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Cascade Orienteering Club. Fort Casey State Park [map], c1994.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Minnesota. Dept. of Natural Resources. Banning State Park, c1999: \$b map verso (located in Pine County, four miles north of the city of Sandstone; est. 1963; 6,237 acres)
- 670 \$a DeLorme Mapping Co. Alaska atlas & gaz., c1992: \$b p. 7 (Chugach State Park)

*Visual Resources*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Gilchrist, S. Pompeii. Stabian Baths (Terme Stabiane) : general view, c1998.

*(A digital photograph)*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Asteroid Gaspra : P-39508AC, 1992.  
*(A poster)*
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Seattle Municipal Street Railway. Seattle Municipal Street Railway photograph collection, 1913-1940 \$b (Westlake Avenue; Westlake Avenue N.; Seattle)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Jackson St. between 11th Avenue and 12th Avenue, showing several men with horse-drawn carts, Seattle, 1883, via the Theodore E. Peiser photographs digital collection, viewed July 30, 2003.
- 670 \$a House of LeGrand Lockwood, 1869 \$b (on architectural first story plan: House of LeGrand Lockwood; label on verso: LeGrand Lockwood Mansion, Norwalk, Conn.)  
*(An architectural drawing)*
- 670 \$a Jenis-jenis Kangguru-pohon [picture], 199- \$b (Kangguru-pohon Bennett (*Dendrolagus bennettianus*), “Jarabeena”, Bennett’s Tree-kangaroo)  
*(A poster)*
- 670 \$a University of Washington campus photographs, via WWW, Jan. 16, 2003 \$b (Administration Building (now Denny Hall); built in 1895)

### **Bibliographic Databases**

Cite the name of the bibliographic database or utility consulted and the date it was searched. In the subfield \$b, give terms or phrases found, terms from titles of works, subject headings, etc., specifying the specific type of information if necessary.

Cite titles or terms found in bibliographic databases to justify variants included in 4XX cross-references. Under no circumstances is it appropriate to cite a title simply to provide further substantiation for the form of heading chosen. Bibliographic database citations should provide new information not present elsewhere in the proposed authority record.

- 670 \$a LC database, May 14, 1999 \$b (systems librarians; systems managers)
- 670 \$a LC database, Dec. 20, 1999 \$b (titles: business ethics; ethics of business; ethics of business enterprise; corporation ethics)
- 670 \$a OCLC, Mar. 23, 2001 \$b (germplasm resources; genetic resources; germ plasm resources; gene resources)

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

- 670 \$a WaU online catalog, Dec. 14, 1999 \$b (Snohomish Estuary; Snohomish River estuary; hdg.: Snohomish River Estuary (Wash.))

### **Remote Electronic Resources**

Because many remote electronic resources are dynamic and the information on them may change, the date of publication of the resource is generally not as important as the date on which the resource was consulted.

For well known Internet resources and search engines, specify the name of the resource and the date searched. Use standard abbreviations for frequently consulted sources (e.g., GNIS for *Geographic Names Information System*, GNS or GEOnet for *GEOnet Names Server*, ITIS for *Integrated Taxonomic Information System*).

- 670 \$a GNIS, Dec. 15, 1999 \$b (Lone Lake, lake, Wash., Island Co.; variant name: Long Lake; 48deg.01min.18sec.N, 122deg.27min.36sec.W; lakes called Long Lake also in other counties)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, Oct. 23, 1998 \$b (Minho, Rio, STM, Jamaica, 17deg.47min.00sec.N, 77deg.17min.00sec.W; Rio Minho River, see Minho, Rio; Minho River, see Minho, Rio)
- 670 \$a ITIS, Oct. 7, 1999 \$b (*Prosopium coulterii*. Common name: pygmy whitefish. Synonym: *Prosopium coulteri*)
- 670 \$a OED online, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: A magistrate of a town, a sheriff or justice, in Spain and Portugal)
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, June 15, 2006 \$b (The Richardson Highway is a highway in the U.S. state of Alaska, running 368 miles (562 km) from Valdez to Fairbanks. It is marked as Alaska Route 4 from Valdez to Delta Junction and as Alaska Route 2 from there to Fairbanks. It was the first major road built in Alaska.)

For resources with a specific title, give the main entry if any and the title, followed by the phrase "via WWW" and the date on which the resource was viewed. If necessary, specify the location of the information in the source by giving a path of links to follow in subfield \$b, using slashes to separate each step (link) in the path.

If desired, the phrase "Electronic reproduction/" or an abbreviated form such as "Electr. reprodu." may be added in front of a citation to indicate that the resource consulted was an electronic reproduction rather than the original. The date viewed may be omitted in such a case.

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Daniel, T.F. Revision of *Spathacanthus*, via WWW, Feb. 14, 2000 \$b (*Spathacanthus*. Acanthaceae; three species occurring in moist to wet forests of Mexico and Central America)

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Electr. reprod./ Fortescue, M. Breeding biology and management of the little penguin, *Eudyptula minor* (Forster), 1780, on Bowen Island, Jervis Bay, 1991: \$b leaf iv (Bowen Island in the Commonwealth Territory of Jervis Bay) leaf 11 (35deg.07min.S 150deg.46min.E; 51 ha off the north eastern tip of the Bherwerre Peninsula within the Commonwealth Territory of Jervis Bay)
- 670 \$a Seychelles : a country study, via WWW, Feb. 26, 2001 \$b (Term for Citizens: Seychellois)
- 670 \$a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)
- 670 \$a Washington place names database, via WWW, Dec. 2, 1999 \$b (Padilla Bay; between Samish Island and Swinomish Channel directly east of Anacortes in west central Skagit County; the bay was named Seno de Padilla in 1791; the name was changed to its present form in 1847)
- 670 \$a Parousia Missions page, via WWW, Jan. 7, 1999: \$b unreached people groups/Africa/Burkina Faso/Karaboro ("The Karaboro tribe of Burkina Faso are also know[n] as Kar, Kama, Karama and Koroma"; pop. 41,100)

For home pages, give the name of the organization or person followed by "home page," "Web site," or similar phrase and the date consulted. If the information in the site is not on the main page, specify a path to follow and give this in the subfield \$b ahead of the information found. Use slashes to separate each step (link) in the path.

- 670 \$a Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 \$b (Duwamish)
- 670 \$a N.Z. Dept. of Conservation home page, Nov. 9, 2005: \$b national parks (Rakiura National Park)
- 670 \$a National register of historic places WWW home page, Nov. 2, 1999: \$b travel/Seattle/list of sites (Volunteer Park)
- 670 \$a Mapquest Web site, Oct. 5, 2005 \$b (Melrose Ave; Melrose Ave E; Seattle; named Melrose Ave E north of E Denny Way and Melrose Ave south of E Denny Way)
- 670 \$a New Zealand disasters, via Christchurch City Libraries Web site, Dec. 23, 2003 \$b (Tangiwai Railway Accident - Waiouru, 1953; Railway accident: Tangiwai. When: 24 December, 1953. Where: Tangiwai, Central North Island)
- 670 \$a Treadmillscentral.com Web site, June 14, 2005: \$b why a treadmill (Treadmills are the best-selling home exercise machine in the U.S.)

## ***MARC Authority Format for Subjects***

Since January 2006, catalogers are permitted *optionally* to include a uniform resource identifier (URI) in subfield \$u of field 670 to link to the cited resource if it contains significant information related to the established heading that cannot be cited succinctly in the authority record. Use of a URI in the 670 \$u does not take the place of the requirement to cite relevant data in subfields \$a and \$b of the 670 field needed to support the heading or references (this information will continue to be available if the site changes or disappears). Do not provide URIs for general reference sources or for web-based reference sources that are included in the LCRIs (e.g., *Contemporary Authors Online*, GNIS, *GEOnet*). If a URI is included, it must be given in subfield \$u. If the URI contains a spacing tilde or a spacing underscore, replace the character with its corresponding hex code, preceded by the percent sign:

%7E for a spacing tilde (~)  
%5F for a spacing underscore ( \_ )  
%20 for a space character ( )

The use of search engine results to substantiate the form of heading chosen or to justify cross-references should be used wisely, and not merely to demonstrate that a Web search yields a number of hits on resources which use a particular term. The search engine cited needs to provide additional information not readily available elsewhere. Additionally, search engine results may be cited to show that one term is preferred over another.

- 670 \$a AltaVista, March 24, 1999 \$b (Saemaul Undong; New village movement; New community movement)
- 670 \$a Yahoo!, Nov. 28, 2000 \$b (category: Entertainment > Movies and Film > Genres > Mockumentaries; terms in linked resources: mock documentary; mockumentaries; fake documentary; fake documentary films)
- 670 \$a Google search, Sept. 23, 2005 \$b (Psittacine Beak and Feather Disease; PBFD; Psittacine beak and feather disease (or psittacine circovirus, PCV); Beak and feather disease (psittacine circoviral disease); Psittacine circoviral disease (PCD); psittacine circoviral (beak and feather) disease; Psittacine Circovirus Disease (PCD))
- 670 \$a Google search, Apr. 25, 2003 \$b (15,200 hits on "keyboard players"; 12,700 hits on "keyboardists"; 5 hits on "keyboard instrument players"; 47 hits on "keyboard players"; 47 hits on "keyboard instrumentalists")

### **Personal Correspondence**

SCM H 203 instructs catalogers to include the date of telephone calls (and by extension, other forms of correspondence) only when adding a citation to an existing authority record to support a change of heading or reference. When pertinent and available, include a person's title and the organization with which (s)he is affiliated. Provide in

parentheses in subfield \$b a brief summary of the relevant information provided by the correspondent.

- 670 \$a Phone call to T. Irwin, curator, Dept. of Entomology, Smithsonian Inst., March 20, 1992 \$b (Malachiidae valid)
- 670 \$a E-mail from Wash. State Parks & Rec. Commission \$b (official name is Saint Edward State Park)
- 670 \$a E-mail from M. Stone, webmaster of Eurofighter Typhoon WWW site, Nov. 2, 1999 \$b (Eurofighter Typhoon and Eurofighter 2000 are same aircraft; Eurofighter Typhoon is the new name)
- 670 \$a Letter from D. Hanna, Olympia Parks, Recreation and Cultural Services Dept. \$b (with the exception of one city block, Heritage Park is under the management of the Wash. Dept. of General Administration. Phase 1 of the park was constructed in 1998. The City of Olympia completed Phase 1 of its share of Heritage Park in 1996. This includes Heritage Fountain; eventually the City will acquire and construct an entire city block that will link Heritage Park to Percival Landing (another city park).)

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

**675: Source Data Not Found**

The 675 field contains citations to sources searched in which no information supporting or relevant to the heading and/or its references is found. Both indicators in 675 are blank. This field is not repeatable and only subfield \$a is valid. Citations to multiple sources are recorded in a single 675 in separate subfield \$a's separated by semicolons (see examples below).

Examples:

675 \$a GEOnet, Apr. 5, 2000

675 \$a Perrot, J. Les langues dans le monde ancien et moderne, 1981

675 \$a Washington place names database, via WWW, Nov. 11, 1999

675 \$a Web. geog.; \$a Columbia gaz.

675 \$a GNIS, Sept. 22, 1999; \$a Gudde, E.G. California place names, 1998; \$a Durham, D.L. California's geographic names, c1998

675 \$a Dictionnaire de la préhistoire, c1988; \$a Archaeo. atlas of the world, 1975; \$a Larousse encyclopedia of archaeology, 1972



**680: General Public Notes (Scope Notes)**

The 680 field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The note is written in a form suitable for public display in online catalogs. In subject authority records, the 680 field is used most commonly for scope notes. Scope notes generally serve to limit the scope of a heading as used in the catalog, helping catalog users determine whether the heading is appropriate for the materials they seek, and enabling catalogers to maintain consistency in the way headings are assigned. Scope notes are also used to provide explanations or definitions for new concepts or unfamiliar terminology. SCM H 400 provides instructions on the types of scope notes used in subject authority records.

When scope notes are used to distinguish the meaning and/or usage of two or more headings, the same information is supplied in a stylized manner under each heading. Scope notes of this type are termed "mirror image" scope notes. Several examples of mirror image scope notes are shown below.

The indicator positions are both blank. Subfield \$i contains explanatory text exclusive of any heading(s) cited in the note, which are included in subfield \$a.

Examples:

100 1 \$a McCartney, Paul \$x Death hoax

680 \$i Here are entered works on the rumored death of Beatles member Paul McCartney in 1969.

150 \$a Dilrubā music

680 \$i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo dilrubā, and collections of compositions in several forms or types for solo dilrubā.

150 \$a Telephone slamming

680 \$i Here are entered works on the unauthorized transfer of an individual's long distance telephone service from one provider to another.

151 \$a Gaeltacht (Ireland)

680 \$i Here are entered works on areas of Ireland where the primary spoken language is Irish.

*Mirror Image Scope Notes*

130 0 \$a Bible \$x In motion pictures

680 \$i Here are entered works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films. Motion picture versions of Biblical stories are entered under \$a Bible films.

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

- 150 \$a Bible films  
680 \$i Here are entered motion picture versions of Biblical stories. Works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films are entered under \$a Bible--In motion pictures.

-----

- 150 \$a Civilization, Turkic  
680 \$i Here are entered works on the civilization of the Turkic peoples of Asia treated collectively. Works on the civilization of Turkey are entered under \$a Turkey--Civilization.

- 151 \$a Turkey \$x Civilization  
680 \$i Here are entered works on the civilization of Turkey. Works on the civilization of the Turkic peoples of Asia treated collectively are entered under \$a Civilization, Turkic.

-----

- 150 \$a Educational videos  
680 \$i Here are entered video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing. Video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner, are entered under \$a Instructional videos. \$i Works on the use of video tapes in education are entered under \$a Video tapes in education.

- 150 \$a Instructional videos  
680 \$i Here are entered video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner. Video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing, are entered under \$a Educational videos. \$i Works on the use of video tapes in education are entered under \$a Video tapes in education.

- 150 \$a Video tapes in education  
680 \$i Here are entered works on the use of video tapes in education. Video recordings intended for teaching and informational purposes, especially those made for classroom viewing, are entered under \$a Educational videos. \$i Video recordings designed to impart skills or techniques to general audiences, typically in a "how-to" manner, are entered under \$a Instructional videos.

**681: Subject Example Tracing Note**

This field contains a note that documents the use of a 1XX established subject or authorized subdivision heading as an example or reference in a 260 Complex See Reference, 360 Complex See Also Reference, or 680 General Public Note (Scope Note) in another authority record. Its purpose is to be able to identify and update the 260, 360, or 680 field when the 1XX heading is changed.

SACO contributors are not responsible for including this field in proposals. SHed staff in CPSO will add them as necessary. SACO participants should however be alert for the presence of 681 fields when making proposals to revise 1XX fields in subject authority records, as this means that the 260, 360, and/or 680 fields on other authority records will also need to be changed.

Both indicators in 681 are blank. The heading referred to is included in subfield \$a. The explanatory text is put in subfield \$i.

Examples:

150 \$a Human-animal relationships  
360 \$i subdivision \$a Effect of human beings on \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

150 \$a Nature \$x Effect of human beings on  
360 \$i subdivision \$a Effect of human beings on \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Fishes--Effect of human beings on

150 \$a Fishes \$x Effect of human beings on  
681 \$i Example under \$a Human-animal relationships; Nature--Effect of human beings on

-----

150 \$a Motion pictures, Chinese  
680 \$i Here are entered works on motion pictures produced by Chinese film companies and shown outside China. General works on motion pictures shown in China or produced by Chinese film companies are entered under \$a Motion pictures--China.

681 \$i Note under \$a Motion pictures--China

150 \$a Motion pictures \$z China  
680 \$i Here are entered general works on motion pictures shown in China or produced by Chinese film companies. Works on motion pictures produced by Chinese film companies and shown outside of China are entered under \$a Motion pictures, Chinese.

681 \$i Note under \$a Motion pictures, Chinese

*MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

- 150 \$a Textbooks  
360 \$i subdivision \$a Textbooks \$i under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under titles of sacred works, and under topical headings; also subdivision \$a Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.] \$i under headings for religious education of individual religions, e.g. \$a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]; \$i and subdivision \$a Textbooks for foreign speakers \$i under individual languages, e.g. \$a English language--Textbooks for foreign speakers
- 150 \$a Religious education \$x Textbooks  
680 \$i Here are entered works discussing religious education textbooks. Individual religious education textbooks are entered under headings for religious education of individual religions, with subdivision \$a Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.], \$i e.g. \$a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.].
- 150 \$a Religious education \$v Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]  
260 \$i subdivision \$a Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.] \$i under headings for religious education of individual religions, e.g. \$a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.].
- 150 \$a Christian education \$v Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]  
680 \$i Here are entered individual Christian education textbooks. Works discussing Christian education textbooks are entered under \$a Christian education--Textbooks.  
681 \$i Example under \$a Textbooks; \$i and under reference from \$a Religious education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]  
681 \$i Notes under \$a Christian education--Textbooks; Religious education--Textbooks
- 150 \$a Christian education \$x Textbooks  
680 \$i Here are entered works discussing Christian education textbooks. Individual Christian education textbooks are entered under headings of the type \$a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.].  
681 \$i Note under \$a Christian education--Textbooks for adults, [children, etc.]

**682: Deleted Heading Note**

This field contains text that explains why a subject authority record has been deleted. The field may also contain replacement headings. SCM H 193 provides instructions to LC catalogers on how to propose the deletion of a subject authority record. H 193.5 provides a list of the standard cancellation notes used in 682. SACO libraries may propose deletions by using the change proposal form and adding a 682 note from the list in H 193.5. If the heading is deleted because it is covered by another subject heading, it is usually necessary to make an accompanying change proposal to add the deleted heading as a used for reference on that other heading. Justifying sources should be cited as 670s in the change proposal.

Both indicators in 682 are blank. Explanatory text goes into subfield \$i and any replacement headings in the note are given in subfield \$a.

Examples:

- 150 \$a Flying phalangers  
682 \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject heading \$a Gliders (Mammals) \$i (sh 86002596).
- 150 \$a Polkas (Band)  
682 \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject headings \$a Polkas \$i (sh 85104482) and \$a Band music \$i (sh 85011470).
- 150 \$a Stanley Cup (Hockey)  
682 \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by an identical name heading (n 99056320).
- 150 \$a Bern Disputation, Bern, Switzerland, 1528  
682 \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name heading \$a Bern Disputation (1528) \$i (no 94009378).

**781: Subdivision Heading Linking Entry--Geographic Subdivision**

When an authority record is created for a geographic entity (151 heading), the 781 field specifies the form of the heading when used as a geographic subdivision. All new SACO proposals for geographic entities should have either a 781 showing the prescribed form of geographic subdivision, or a 667 stating that that heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision (see p. 133). SCM H 836 provides detailed guidance on when to include a 781 field and how to code it properly. Catalogers unsure of the prescribed form of geographic subdivision should follow the instructions in SCM H 830.

The first indicator is always blank (undefined) and the second indicator should be 0 (indicating LCSH). Subfield \$z is the only subfield used in 781. A geographic subdivision may consist of one or two subfield \$z's depending on the nature of the heading (see SCM H 830).

Examples:

151 \$a Granite Mountains (Wyo.)  
781 0 \$z Wyoming \$z Granite Mountains

151 \$a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)  
781 0 \$z Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)

151 \$a Midea (Extinct city)  
781 0 \$z Greece \$z Midea (Extinct city)

151 \$a Undara Volcano (Qld.)  
781 0 \$z Australia \$z Undara Volcano (Qld.)

151 \$a Kinabalu, Mount (Sabah)  
781 0 \$z Malaysia \$z Kinabalu, Mount (Sabah)

151 \$a Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture, Laos)  
781 0 \$z Laos \$z Ngum River (Xiangkhoang Province and Viangchan Prefecture)

151 \$a Sylvan Lake (Alta. : Lake)  
781 0 \$z Alberta \$z Sylvan Lake (Lake)

151 \$a May Creek (King County, Wash. : Creek)  
781 0 \$z Washington (State) \$z May Creek (King County : Creek)

## **952: Local Notes**

The 952 field is a local note field that is used to cite a pattern used for the creation of a new heading or to cite sections within the *Subject Cataloging Manual* that provide instructions on how a heading and its references should be formulated. It is also used to provide nondisplaying permanent notes in authority records. This field is maintained in the records residing in the LCSH Master Database at LC. Because it is not included in subject authority records distributed by CDS, it will not be present in authority records viewed in utilities such as OCLC.

Both indicators in 952 fields are blank.

SCM H 202 provides further information on when catalogers should cite a pattern.

Examples:

130 0 \$a Bhagavadgītā \$x Relation to the Bible  
952 \$a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible

150 \$a Asian American legislators  
952 \$a LC pattern: Hispanic American legislators; Asian American lawyers

150 \$a Dramatists, Vietnamese  
952 \$a LC pattern: Dramatists, Thai

150 \$a Wetland restoration  
952 \$a LC pattern: Watershed restoration

Another major use of 952 is to cite the *Subject Cataloging Manual*. SCM H 200 states: "If the heading and/or its reference structure is being established according to a pattern prescribed in a specific instruction sheet in the *Subject Cataloging Manual*, add a 952 field containing the number of the instruction sheet. Use the abbreviation SCM." In the example below, the 952 points to the instruction sheet in the SCM entitled "Buildings and Other Structures."

110 2 \$a 19th Police Precinct Station House (New York, N.Y.)  
952 \$a SCM H 1334

The subject authority proposal form on the Web has a box labeled "LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet" in which to input the two types of local notes discussed above.

Field 952 has several other uses. It can be used to record other information that might be useful to the editorial approval process or for future reference. LC staff also use it to record the number of bibliographic records that will need to be changed if a proposal is approved (supplying this number is not required of SACO participants, but if LCCNs of bibliographic records needing changes are identified in the course of doing authority

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

research, it would be helpful to provide that information with the proposal). The subject authority proposal form on the Web has a box labeled "LC bib. records to be changed" if participants wish to determine and supply this count. LCCNs of records needing BFM can be given in the comments box.

When a heading is supposed to be established in the vernacular language, but the vernacular form cannot be found either in the work being cataloged or in readily available sources, the heading is established in the form known to the cataloger, but the authority record will be coded as provisional in fixed field 008/33. SCM H 1334, "Buildings and Other Structures," instructs catalogers creating a new authority in such cases to add a 952 field with the word "Provisional." (This note should be included in the comments box on the subject authority proposal Web form). Similar procedures should be followed whenever a heading is supposed to be established in the vernacular. If the vernacular form becomes known at a later date, the heading on the provisional authority record should be changed.

Example:

```
151  $a Pirin National Park (Bulgaria)
451  $a Vihren National Park (Bulgaria)
550  $w g $a National parks and reserves $z Bulgaria
670  $a Endemic and relict insects in the Pirin National Park, Bulgaria, c1997.
670  $a UNESCO World Heritage sites home page, July 19, 1999 $b (Pirin National
    Park, 41°40'N 22°50'E; est. 1963 as Vihren National Park, enlarged and
    renamed Pirin National Park in 1976)
675  $a GEOnet, July 19, 1999; $a Times atlas
781  0 $z Bulgaria $z Pirin National Park
952  $a Provisional
```

Field 952 may also be used to record informational notes to persons such as SACO staff at LC and SACO mentors who will be reviewing the proposal. For example, if a classification proposal is made that is related to a subject heading proposal and the subject heading is being submitted via the Web proposal form while the classification proposal has been submitted through Classification Web or faxed to the Cooperative Cataloging Team, make a 952 note on the subject proposal to alert the Coop Team liaison receiving the subject proposal that there is also a classification proposal that needs to be submitted to CPSO at the same time. Examples:

```
952  $a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Feb. 14, 2007
```

```
952  $a Classification proposal faxed to Coop on 29 May 2007
```

The 952 field is not intended for notes to reviewers to justify the heading proposed. The choice and form of heading selected should be clear from the sources cited in 670 fields and should need no further explanation.



## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

When a subject proposal requires two or more different kinds of local notes, give them in separate 952 fields:

```
053 0 $a SF293.N67
150   $a North Swedish horse
952   $a LC pattern: Clydesdale horse
952   $a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Jan. 2, 2007
```

In the above example, the first 952 note would be input on the subject authority proposal Web form in the box labeled “LC pattern or SCM instruction sheet,” while the second 952 note would be entered in the box for comments.

## *MARC Authority Format for Subjects*

### **953: Cataloger Code**

This is a local field used in the LCSH Master Database at LC. The field contains alphanumeric codes for catalogers and editors at LC. Subfield \$a contains the code for the original proposer or creator of the record and subfield \$b holds the code for the person who last revised the record. The Cooperative Cataloging Team's code (yz00) is used in records for headings proposed or revised through SACO.

## Subject Heading Change Proposals

## **When to Make a Change Proposal**

Change proposals are made for a variety of reasons. Probably the most common reason is to add additional cross-references from unused forms to the authorized subject heading (examples A-C below). In the course of cataloging an item, the cataloger may identify variant terms that would be useful to have in the authority file and in the printed LCSH.

Other reasons to make change proposals:

- the authorized form of heading is determined to be obsolete or no longer in common use and has been replaced by some other term (example F). Current sources such as dictionaries, thesauri, indexes, and other works can be cited to demonstrate that this is the case.
- the name of a geographic place or other named entity (e.g., buildings; awards) has changed. For example, in 1994 Death Valley National Monument became Death Valley National Park, requiring a change in the authorized form of heading. Similarly, in 2003 the American Library Association's Gay, Lesbian, Bisexual, and Transgendered Book Award changed its name to the Stonewall Book Awards, necessitating a change in LCSH as well.
- to differentiate a previously unique heading that is now ambiguous or non-unique. The heading **Lucy (Fictitious character)** was established in 1996 for a character in poems by William Wordsworth. In 2000, the heading **Van Pelt, Lucy (Fictitious character)** was established, with a used for reference from Lucy (Fictitious character : Schulz). In 2003 and 2005, the headings **Lucy (Fictitious character : Hughes)** and **Lucy (Fictitious character : Jungman)** were established. To eliminate any potential confusion, the 1996 heading was changed to **Lucy (Fictitious character : Wordsworth)**.
- the authorized heading was created according to earlier subject practices and is no longer the correct form under current practices. For example, the current practice (SCM H 1332) is to establish common names of individual species of animals and plants in the singular form and any higher level groupings such as genus, family, order, class, etc., in the plural form (e.g., **Grizzly bear** vs. **Bears**). However, there are still many examples of individual species set up in the plural form, and a proposal could be submitted to change a heading to the singular form to conform with current practice. Another example occurs when a species or group established in the Latin (scientific) form of name is determined to have an unambiguous common English-language name. Since current practice (SCM H 1332) is to prefer the common name, catalogers could submit a change proposal in such a case (example H).
- to change, correct, or add broader or related terms (examples D, E, K). A new heading might be created that belongs as the BT on already existing headings. A change to an authorized form of heading would also require changes on all other records that used the previous authorized form as a BT or RT. If a new heading is

### *When to Make a Change Proposal*

created with a related term reference, the reciprocal reference must also be made on the existing heading.

- to correct or add a classification number (field 053) to a heading (examples I-J)
- to correct, change, add, or delete a qualifier in a heading. The heading **Pinhook Swamp (Ga.)** was originally established based on inadequate information. This swamp is actually located in both Florida and Georgia, so a proposal was made to change it to **Pinhook Swamp (Fla. and Ga.)**. In 1999, Canada's Northwest Territories split into two territories. Northwest Territories kept its name. The newly formed territory is named Nunavut. All subject headings for places that used (N.W.T.) as a geographic qualifier that are now part of Nunavut had to be changed (e.g., **Baffin Island (N.W.T.)** was changed to **Baffin Island (Nunavut)**).
- to add or change a scope note on an existing authority. For example, the heading **Family** lacked a scope note until 2005, when a SACO proposal was approved to add a scope note that made it clear that the heading was used for works on the sociological concept and structure of the family and also for works on the everyday life, interactions, and relationships of family members. Sometimes, the creation of a new subject heading requires the addition or change of a scope note on another heading. For example, when the heading **Helplines** was established, a scope note distinguishing it from the already established heading **Hotlines (Counseling)** was included on both authority records.
- to authorize a heading for geographic subdivision (see SCM H 194 and H 364 sec. 4). Although the heading **Death** has been in existence for a long time, it was only authorized for geographic subdivision in 2005 on weekly list 38.
- to correct MARC tagging of fields or subfields within authority records



SACO Home >>

Find  in

## LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form

Refer to LC Subject Heading Change **Guidelines** for guidance in filling in this form.  
Write to [SACO@loc.gov](mailto:SACO@loc.gov) for questions, follow-up, etc.

**Note:** Use dollar sign to denote a delimiter before a subfield code (e.g., \$x); copy **diacritics** from list and paste following letter over which diacritic should appear (e.g., Kama(macron)nche; Me(acute)xico)

**010** LCCN of record to be changed:  e.g., sh200101234 (**do not** include hyphens)

**040** MARC 21 identification code:  (not utility code)

Change  Add  Delete **053:**

**1XX heading on existing record:**

Change **1XX** to:

Change  Add  Delete **4xx:**

Change  Add  Delete **4xx:**

Change  Add  Delete **4xx:**

Change  Add  Delete **5xx:**

Change  Add  Delete **5xx:**

Change  Add  Delete **5xx:**

**Note:** When adding 5XX RT, please note in comments box below.

Add **670**; use dollar sign before subfield; copy **diacritics** from list and paste after affected letter (e.g., Kama(macron)nche)

Add **670**

Add **670**

Change  Add  Delete **680: Scope note:**

Change  Add  Delete **781:**

Change  Add  Delete **667:**

**Comments; additional 053s, 4xxs; 670s, etc.:**

Submitted by:

Institution:

## LC SUBJECT HEADING CHANGE GUIDELINES

These instructions are to be used when filling in the LCSH Subject Change Proposal Form found on the SACO home page.

**Requestor's MARC 21 organization code:** \_\_\_\_\_

- Enter the institution's MARC 21 code (formerly NUC symbol or USMARC code). Do not use the institution's OCLC code.

**Record Control Number 010:** sh \_\_\_\_\_

- Enter the subject authority record control number as it is found in the 010 field of the authority record.

**Geographic subdivision 008/06** \_\_\_\_\_ i = May Subd Geog

- If the heading should be divided geographically, enter an X. If unable to determine this or if the heading should not be divided geographically, do nothing to this field (cf. SCM **H 194** and **H 364**). If using the Web change proposal form, indicate the proposed change in geographic subdivision practice in the comments box.

**Library of Congress Classification Number 053:** change: \_\_\_\_\_ add: \_\_\_\_\_ delete: \_\_\_\_\_

- If the change involves adding a number to an existing authority record, indicate the number in the area provided.
- If the change involves modification of an existing number, indicate the correction in this area.
- If the change involves deleting a number, indicate that number in the area provided. For further guidance on when to add, delete or change the 053 field, refer to SCM **H 196**.
- For guidance on when to assign and when not to assign a number to a heading, refer to SCM **H 365**.

### CHANGE OF HEADING

**1XX:** change to: \_\_\_\_\_

- Indicate the new form of heading in this area.

NOTE: Because changing the 1XX field of a subject heading may involve significant work on maintenance of the bibliographic and authority files both at the Library of Congress, and in other libraries, a cataloger should consider the impact of such a change and be judicious in recommending one. Changing the 1XX field of a subject heading means also changing all occurrences of that subject heading in other authority records (e.g., use as BT references, appearance in scope notes, use with subdivisions, etc.). Changing the 1XX field of a subject heading must be supported by adequate, appropriate authority research demonstrating clear preference for the proposed form. Cite references in separate 670s. When in doubt, contact the Cooperative Cataloging Team at: [saco@loc.gov](mailto:saco@loc.gov).

### Changes to Cross-References

4XX: change: \_\_\_\_\_ 4XX: add: \_\_\_\_\_ 4XX: delete: \_\_\_\_\_

- Indicate references to be added, changed, or deleted in the area provided.
- For further guidance on how references should be constructed and in which form, refer to SCM **H 195** and **H 373**.
- Please cite sources in separate 670 fields for each additional UF reference.

### Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References

5XX: change: \_\_\_\_\_ 5XX: add: \_\_\_\_\_ 5XX: delete: \_\_\_\_\_

- Indicate broader term and related term references to be added, changed, or deleted.
- For further guidance on how to change a BT for a subject heading, refer to SCM **H 195**.
- For further guidance on how to determine an appropriate BT and on how to determine if headings qualify to be related term references, refer to SCM **H 370**.

**Source Citations** 670: add: \_\_\_\_\_

- Include in this area, citations to reference works and information to justify the heading or references being added, changed, or deleted.
- For further guidance, refer to SCM **H 200**, **H 202**, and **H 203**.

**Scope Notes** 680: add: \_\_\_\_\_

- Include in this area the text of a note to define or limit the use of a particular heading.
- For further guidance on drafting a scope note, refer to SCM **H 400**.

**Geographic Subdivision** 781: change: \_\_\_\_\_ add: \_\_\_\_\_ delete: \_\_\_\_\_

- For a geographic heading, include, if appropriate, the prescribed form of geographic subdivision for the heading.
- For guidance on when to include a 781 field and how to formulate geographic subdivisions, refer to SCM **H 836** and **H 830**.



**Nonpublic General Note 667:** change: \_\_\_\_\_ add: \_\_\_\_\_ delete: \_\_\_\_\_

- When the 781 field is not appropriate for a heading coded 151 (e.g., when the heading is a celestial body or a geographic entity in a city; cf. SCM **H 836**) supply a 667 field with this note: *This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.*

**Comments; additional 053s, 4XXs, 670s, etc.:**

- Use this box for brief general comments to reviewers of the proposal as well as for additional changes to the subject authority record that there is no other space for on the form.

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### **Examples of Subject Heading Change Proposals**

#### **Examples A-C: Adding cross-references (used for references)**

The examples below illustrate proposals to add one or more cross-references from unused terms to an authorized subject heading along with at least one justifying citation. The addition of alternative terms (synonyms in most cases) helps both catalogers and catalog users find materials by referring them to the authorized heading.

#### **Example A**

##### Authority Record Before

- 010 \$a sh 88004778
- 040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC
- 150 \$a Fast growing trees
- 550 \$w g \$a Fast growing plants
- 550 \$w g \$a Trees
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Lakho, A.G. Growth and management of fast growing tree species in Sind, 1983.
- 670 \$a LC database, July 28, 1988 \$b (fast-growing pines, fast-growing plantation wood species, fast growing trees species, fast-growing species, fast-growing acacias, fast growing timber trees)
- 675 \$a Web. 3; \$a Random House; \$a Biol. & agr. index; \$a Forest term.; \$a Term. forest sci.

##### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 88004778

Changes to Cross-References:  
4XX: add: Quick growing trees

Source Citations:  
670: add: Report to the Government of the Yemen Arab Republic on afforestation and quick-growing tree species, 1974.

##### Authority Record After

- 010 \$a sh 88004778
- 040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU
- 150 \$a Fast growing trees
- 450 \$a Quick growing trees
- 550 \$w g \$a Fast growing plants
- 550 \$w g \$a Trees
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Lakho, A.G. Growth and management of fast growing tree species

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

- in Sind, 1983.
- 670 \$a LC database, July 28, 1988 \$b (fast-growing pines, fast-growing plantation wood species, fast growing trees species, fast-growing species, fast-growing acacias, fast growing timber trees)
- 670 \$a Report to the Government of the Yemen Arab Republic on afforestation and quick-growing tree species, 1974.
- 675 \$a Web. 3; \$a Random House; \$a Biol. & agr. index; \$a Forest term.; \$a Term. forest sci.

### **Example B**

#### Authority Record Before

- 010 \$a sh 85075551  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC  
150 \$a Lease or buy decisions  
450 \$a Buy or lease decisions  
450 \$a Lease-purchase decisions  
450 \$a Purchase or lease decisions  
550 \$w g \$a Finance  
550 \$a Leases  
550 \$a Purchasing

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaEIC  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85075551

#### Changes to Cross-References:

- 4XX: add: Buy versus lease decisions  
add: Lease/buy decisions  
add: Lease or purchase decisions  
add: Lease versus buy decisions  
add: Lease vs. buy decisions

#### Source Citations:

- 670: add: Pritchard, R.E. The lease/buy decision, 1980.  
add: Madura, J. The lease vs. buy decision for land, 1985.  
add: Silber, J.F. Buy versus lease, 1990.

#### Authority Record After

- 010 \$a sh 85075551  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d WaEIC  
150 \$a Lease or buy decisions  
450 \$a Buy or lease decisions  
450 \$a Buy versus lease decisions  
450 \$a Lease/buy decisions  
450 \$a Lease or purchase decisions

### ***Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples***

- 450 \$a Lease-purchase decisions
- 450 \$a Lease versus buy decisions
- 450 \$a Lease vs. buy decisions
- 450 \$a Purchase or lease decisions
- 550 \$w g \$a Finance
- 550 \$a Leases
- 550 \$a Purchasing
- 670 \$a Pritchard, R.E. The lease/buy decision, 1980.
- 670 \$a Madura, J. The lease vs. buy decision for land, 1985.
- 670 \$a Silber, J.F. Buy versus lease, 1990.

### **Example C**

#### Authority Record Before

- 010 \$a sh 92003216
- 040 \$a DGPO \$c DLC \$d DLC
- 151 \$a Snohomish River (Wash.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Washington (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: U.S. National Ocean Service. Everett Harbor, 1991: \$b map recto (Snohomish River)
- 670 \$a Lippincott
- 670 \$a Web. geog.
- 675 \$a Nat. Geog. atlas

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 92003216

#### Changes to Cross-References:

- 4XX: add: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River (Wash.)
  - add: Sinahomis River (Wash.)
  - add: Sinnahamis River (Wash.)
  - add: Tuxpam River (Wash.)

#### Source Citations:

670: add: GNIS, July 13, 2000 \$b (Snohomish River, stream, Wash., Snohomish Co., variant names: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River, Sinahomis River, Sinnahamis River, Tuxpam River; Tuxpam River also a variant name for Stillaguamish River)

781: add: \$z Washington (State) \$z Snohomish River

*Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

Authority Record After

- 010 \$a sh 92003216
- 040 \$a DGPO \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU
- 151 \$a Snohomish River (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Sinahomis River (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Sinnahamis River (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Tuxpam River (Wash.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Washington (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: U.S. National Ocean Service. Everett Harbor, 1991: \$b map recto  
(Snohomish River)
- 670 \$a Lippincott
- 670 \$a Web. geog.
- 670 \$a GNIS, July 13, 2000 \$b (Snohomish River, stream, Wash., Snohomish Co.,  
variant names: Sdoh-doh-hohbsh River, Sinahomis River, Sinnahamis River,  
Tuxpam River; Tuxpam River also a variant name for Stillaguamish River)
- 675 \$a Nat. Geog. atlas
- 781 0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Snohomish River

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### **Example D: Adding a see also related term reference**

This example shows the addition of a related term reference. In this particular case, a library makes a proposal for a new subject heading, **Exploitation films** (see example in Appendix A, p. 268), and on that record it includes **Sensationalism in motion pictures** as a related heading. Since related term references must be made reciprocally, the library also turns in a change proposal to have **Exploitation films** added as a related heading on the record for **Sensationalism in motion pictures**.

#### Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 85120039  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC  
053 0 \$a PN1995.9.S284  
150 \$a Sensationalism in motion pictures  
550 \$w g \$a Motion pictures

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: CSt  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85120039

Changes to Cross-References:

Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:  
5XX: add: (RT) Exploitation films

#### Authority Record After

010 \$a sh 85120039  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d CSt  
053 0 \$a PN1995.9.S284  
150 \$a Sensationalism in motion pictures  
550 \$w g \$a Motion pictures  
550 \$a Exploitation films

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### **Example E: Adding a broader term reference**

This proposal shows the addition of a broader term, with the control subfield \$w coded with the value **g**, which distinguishes it from related terms, where no control subfield is present.

In this case, when the heading Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.) was established, the range of which those mountains are a part, the Ozark Mountains, was not included as a broader term. Another library examining the record realizes that this BT is needed and submits a proposal to add it.

#### Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 00002503  
040 \$a InU \$b eng \$c DLC  
151 \$a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Arkansas  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Oklahoma  
670 \$a Work cat.: McBane, R.A. Ouachita Mountain, Arkansas Valley, and Boston Mountain sections, 1972.  
670 \$a GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 \$b (Boston Mountains, Arkansas; range; 93°20'30"W, 35°42'44"N; 93°30'01"W, 35°42'44"N)  
670 \$a Lippincott \$b (Boston Mountains, most rugged part of the Ozarks, mostly in NW Ark., with parts in NE Okla.)  
670 \$a Web. geog. \$b (Boston Mountains, ridge in Ozark Plateau in NW Arkansas)  
781 0 \$z Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 00002503

Change to Cross-References:

Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:

5XX: add: (BT) Ozark Mountains

Note: In this particular instance, an additional 670 source citation is not needed, because the existing citations in the authority record already document that the Boston Mountains are part of the Ozarks.

#### Authority Record After

010 \$a sh 00002503  
040 \$a InU \$b eng \$c DLC \$d WaU  
151 \$a Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Arkansas  
550 \$w g \$a Mountains \$z Oklahoma  
551 \$w g \$a Ozark Mountains  
670 \$a Work cat.: McBane, R.A. Ouachita Mountain, Arkansas Valley, and Boston

***Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples***

- Mountain sections, 1972.
- 670 \$a GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 \$b (Boston Mountains, Arkansas; range; 93°20'30"W, 35°42'44"N; 93°30'01"W, 35°42'44"N)
- 670 \$a Lippincott \$b (Boston Mountains, most rugged part of the Ozarks, mostly in NW Ark., with parts in NE Okla.)
- 670 \$a Web. geog. \$b (Boston Mountains, ridge in Ozark Plateau in NW Arkansas)
- 781 0 \$z Boston Mountains (Ark. and Okla.)



**Examples F-H: Changing the authorized form of heading**

These examples show proposals to change the authorized (1XX) form of a heading. The old form of heading is moved to a cross-reference (4XX) with the control subfield \$w coded with value **nne** to show that the term was once the established form. One must also remember that when a 1XX is changed, if the heading in the 1XX is used as a 5XX reference on other records, then the 5XX on the other record(s) must also be changed to the new form. In addition, any headings that include the earlier established form (e.g., in a phrase heading, as a qualifier, or as a subdivision) must be examined and likely will need to be changed at the same time.

Note that in cases where the 1XX is being changed, the presence of an 053 in the record is an indication that the same terminology may appear in the classification caption under that number. Libraries that use LCC should check the classification caption and, if necessary, submit an accompanying proposal to update it.

**Example F**

In this example, it is determined that the currently accepted form of name for a Native American Indian tribe differs from the authorized form. Because the currently accepted name of the tribe is a cross-reference in the existing authority record, a proposal to switch the 1XX and 4XX is needed in this case. The library can include the control subfield in the proposal or it can simply indicate that it is needed by adding in brackets "[earlier established form]," as was done in this example.

Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 85040175  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC  
053 0 \$a E99.D9  
150 \$a Dwamish Indians  
450 \$a Duwamish Indians  
550 \$w g \$a Coast Salish Indians  
550 \$w g \$a Indians of North America \$z Washington (State)

Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85040175  
1XX: change to: Duwamish Indians

Changes to Cross-References:

4XX: add: Dwamish Indians [earlier form of heading]  
4XX: delete: Duwamish Indians

## ***Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples***

### Source Citations:

- 670: add: Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 \$b (Duwamish)  
670: add: Gale encyclopedia of Native American tribes, c1998: \$b pp. 316-321  
(Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)  
670: add: Native America in the twentieth century, 1994: \$b p. 172 (Duwamish)  
670: add: Ruby, R.H. A guide to the Indian tribes of the Pacific Northwest, c1986: \$b p.  
72 (Duwamish (Coastal Division, Salishan))

### Authority Record After

- 010 \$a sh 85040175  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU  
053 0 \$a E99.D9  
150 \$a Duwamish Indians  
450 \$w nne \$a Dwamish Indians  
550 \$w g \$a Coast Salish Indians  
550 \$w g \$a Indians of North America \$z Washington (State)  
670 \$a Duwamish Tribe WWW home page, Sept. 10, 1999 \$b (Duwamish)  
670 \$a Gale encyclopedia of Native American tribes, c1998: \$b pp. 316-321  
(Duwamish; one of the many Salishan tribes in the Puget Sound Area)  
670 \$a Native America in the twentieth century, 1994: \$b p. 172 (Duwamish)  
670 \$a Ruby, R.H. A guide to the Indian tribes of the Pacific Northwest, c1986: \$b p.  
72 (Duwamish (Coastal Division, Salishan))

### **Example G**

This example shows a change proposal for a heading for a named entity that has changed its name. The heading for this arts center was established in 1998 as **Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)**. In 2005, when the heading was needed again, the cataloger discovered that the center had changed its name in 2001 to Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center. A proposal was submitted to change the heading to match the current name.

### Authority Record Before

- 010 \$a sh 98002644  
040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC  
110 2 \$a Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)  
410 2 \$a Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)  
550 \$w g \$a Centers for the performing arts \$z Washington (State)  
670 \$a A theater annex to the Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center in Seattle, 1997.  
670 \$a US West dex Seattle metro white pages, April 1998 \$b (Langston Hughes  
Cultural Arts Center)

### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 98002644  
1XX: change to: Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### Changes to Cross-References:

4XX: add: Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.) [earlier form of heading]

4XX: add: Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

### Source Citations:

670: add: Seattle Parks & Recreation Dept. website, Sept. 22, 2005: \$b centers and pools (Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center; operates as a cultural performing arts center under the Seattle Department of Parks and Recreation) history (housed in what was formerly the Jewish Synagogue of Chevra Bikur Cholim. The building is listed in the National Registry as a historical landmark)

670: add: Phone call to the Center, Sept. 22, 2005 \$b (changed name in 2001)

### Authority Record After

010 \$a sh 98002644

040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC \$d WaU

110 2 \$a Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

410 2 \$a Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

410 2 \$a Hughes Performing Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

410 2 \$w nne \$a Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center (Seattle, Wash.)

550 \$w g \$a Centers for the performing arts \$z Washington (State)

670 \$a A theater annex to the Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center in Seattle, 1997.

670 \$a US West dex Seattle metro white pages, April 1998 \$b (Langston Hughes Cultural Arts Center)

670 \$a Seattle Parks & Recreation Dept. website, Sept. 22, 2005: \$b centers and pools (Langston Hughes Performing Arts Center; operates as a cultural performing arts center under the Seattle Department of Parks and Recreation) history (housed in what was formerly the Jewish Synagogue of Chevra Bikur Cholim. The building is listed in the National Registry as a historical landmark)

670 \$a Phone call to the Center, Sept. 22, 2005 \$b (changed name in 2001)

### **Example H**

In this example, a heading for a group of plants established under its scientific name is changed to the common name for the group. LC policy (SCM H 1332) is to prefer a common name if it is in general use, is unambiguous, and is supported by various reference works and official lists of common names.

### Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 87001925 \$z sh 88022521

040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC

053 0 \$a QK495.R215 \$c Botany

053 0 \$a SB413.A25 \$c Ornamental plants

150 \$a Aconitum

450 \$a Aconites (Plants)

550 \$w g \$a Ranunculaceae

### ***Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples***

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Gorelova, A.P. Introduktsiia akonitov v Subarktiku, 1986.
- 670 \$a Web. 3.
- 670 \$a Hortus 3.
- 670 \$a Wyman's Gardening encyc.

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 87001925  
1XX: change to: Monkshoods

Changes to Cross-References:

- 4XX: add: Aconitum [earlier form of heading]
- 4XX: add: Monkshood

Source Citations:

- 670: change: Web. 3 (aconite; Aconitum; monkshood)
- 670: add: Integrated Taxon. Info. System, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Common name: monkshood. Family Ranunculaceae)
- 670: add: GRIN taxonomy, via WWW, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Family: Ranunculaceae. Common name: aconite, monkshood)
- 670: add: PLANTS database, via WWW, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Common name: monkshood)
- 670: add: Encarta world Eng. dict. \$b (monkshood: plural -hood or -hoods)

#### Authority Record After

- 010 \$a sh 87001925 \$z sh 88022521
- 040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU
- 053 0 \$a QK495.R215 \$c Botany
- 053 0 \$a SB413.A25 \$c Ornamental plants
- 150 \$a Monkshoods
- 450 \$a Aconites (Plants)
- 450 \$w nne \$a Aconitum
- 450 \$a Monkshood
- 550 \$w g \$a Ranunculaceae
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Gorelova, A.P. Introduktsiia akonitov v Subarktiku, 1986.
- 670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (aconite; Aconitum; monkshood)
- 670 \$a Hortus 3.
- 670 \$a Wyman's Gardening encyc.
- 670 \$a Integrated Taxon. Info. System, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Common name: monkshood. Family Ranunculaceae)
- 670 \$a GRIN taxonomy, via WWW, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Family: Ranunculaceae. Common name: aconite, monkshood)
- 670 \$a PLANTS database, via WWW, June 8, 2000 \$b (Aconitum. Common name: monkshood)
- 670 \$a Encarta world Eng. dict. \$b (monkshood: plural -hood or -hoods)

## **Examples I-J: Revising an 053 Field**

These examples illustrate the correction of a classification range in the 053 field of an authority record, along with the addition of new cross-references. In some cases, an authority record may lack 053s and a library may wish to have one or more added. In the examples below, the classification schedule changed somewhat since the 053 was put in the authority records and upon noticing this discrepancy, a library can submit a proposal to change the 053 to bring it up to date with the classification. The 053 qualifier *Zoology*, which is included on all new headings for animals, is also added to older records if they are modified for other reasons.

While the examples below show a revision of the 053 field in combination with other changes, SACO proposals consisting of just an 053 addition or a change to an existing 053 field are also perfectly acceptable.

### **Example I**

#### Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 85004598  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d CSfA  
053 0 \$a QL641 \$b QL669.3  
150 \$a Amphibians  
450 \$a Amphibia  
450 \$a Batrachia  
550 \$w g \$a Vertebrates  
550 \$a Herpetology  
670 \$a Syn. class. liv. org.  
670 \$a Web. 3

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85004598

Library of Congress Classification Number  
053: change to: QL640-QL669.8 (Zoology)

#### Changes to Cross-References:

4XX: add: Herpetofauna  
4XX: add: Herpetozoa  
4XX: add: Herps  
4XX: add: Herptiles

#### Source Citations:

670: add: Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors, 1991: \$b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))  
670: add: LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)  
670: add: OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

## ***Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples***

### Authority Record After

010 \$a sh 85004598  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d CSfA \$d WaU  
053 0 \$a QL640 \$b QL669.8 \$c Zoology  
150 \$a Amphibians  
450 \$a Amphibia  
450 \$a Batrachia  
450 \$a Herpetofauna  
450 \$a Herpetozoa  
450 \$a Herps  
450 \$a Herptiles  
550 \$w g \$a Vertebrates  
550 \$a Herpetology  
670 \$a Syn. class. liv. org.  
670 \$a Web. 3.  
670 \$a Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors,  
1991: \$b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))  
670 \$a LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)  
670 \$a OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

### **Example J**

### Authority Record Before

010 \$a sh 85112964  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC  
053 0 \$a QL640 \$b QL669.3  
150 \$a Reptiles  
550 \$w g \$a Amniotes  
550 \$w g \$a Vertebrates  
550 \$a Herpetology

### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85004598

Library of Congress Classification Number  
053: change to: QL640-QL669.8 (Zoology)

Changes to Cross-References:

4XX: add: Herpetofauna  
4XX: add: Herpetozoa  
4XX: add: Herps  
4XX: add: Herptiles  
4XX: add: Reptilia

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### Source Citations:

670: add: Integrated Taxon. Info. System, June 8, 2000 \$b (Class Reptilia. Common name: reptiles. Subphylum Vertebrata, Phylum Chordata)

670: add: Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors, 1991: \$b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))

670: add: LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)

670: add: OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

### Authority Record After

010 \$a sh 85112964

040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU

053 0 \$a QL640 \$b QL669.8 \$c Zoology

150 \$a Reptiles

450 \$a Herpetofauna

450 \$a Herpetozoa

450 \$a Herps

450 \$a Herptiles

450 \$a Reptilia

550 \$w g \$a Amniotes

550 \$w g \$a Vertebrates

550 \$a Herpetology

670 \$a Integrated Taxon. Info. System, June 8, 2000 \$b (Class Reptilia. Common name: reptiles. Subphylum Vertebrata, Phylum Chordata)

670 \$a Ross, D.A. Amphibians and reptiles in the diets of North American raptors, 1991: \$b t.p. (amphibians and reptiles (collectively, herptiles))

670 \$a LC database, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (titles: Herptile; herps; Herpetofauna)

670 \$a OCLC, Sept. 18, 2000 \$b (herptiles; Herpetozoa)

## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

### **Example K: Revision of references**

In this example, the three existing broader terms are not correct under current practice, since one would not make a broader term reference from a heading for a class of persons (Mayors) to a heading for a type of government. A check of the fixed fields of this authority record would show that the references on this record are unevaluated (value **b** in fixed field 008/29). In this case, the broader term heading, if there is an appropriate one, should also be for a class of persons. In addition, the first 053 on this record is corrected and the second two are deleted, since current practice is not to give classification numbers for specific localities (otherwise, an 053 could be added for every country). Source citations are added that justify the references retained on the record.

CPSO will recode the 008/29 from **b** to **a** in records with references that have been revised to conform to current stated policy in SCM H 370.

#### Authority Record Before

008/29 b  
010 \$a sh 85082436  
040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC  
053 0 \$a JS143 \$b JS163  
053 0 \$a JS356 \$b JS365 \$c United States  
053 0 \$a JS3155 \$b JS3161 \$c Great Britain  
150 \$a Mayors  
450 \$a Alcaldes  
550 \$w g \$a Local government  
550 \$w g \$a Municipal corporations  
550 \$w g \$a Municipal government  
550 \$a Corregidores

#### Change Proposal Submitted to SACO

Requestor's MARC 21 organization code: WaU  
Record Control Number 010: sh 85082436

Library of Congress Classification Number  
053: change to: JS141 \$b JS163  
053: delete: JS356 \$b JS365 \$c United States  
053: delete: JS3155 \$b JS3161 \$c Great Britain

Broader Term (BT) & Related Term (RT) References:  
5XX: add: (BT) Municipal officials and employees  
5XX: delete: Local government  
5XX: delete: Municipal corporations  
5XX: delete: Municipal government

Source Citations:  
670: add: Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)



## *Subject Heading Change Proposal Examples*

670: add: Encarta world Eng. dict., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde, pl. alcaldes: mayor: the mayor or chief magistrate of a town in a Spanish-speaking area)  
670: add: OED online, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: A magistrate of a town, a sheriff or justice, in Spain and Portugal)  
670: add: Web. 3 \$b (alcalde: an administrative and judicial officer in villages, towns, or districts in Spain and regions under Spanish influence; corregidor: a Spanish magistrate; esp.: the chief magistrate or governor of a town in Spain or the Spanish colonies)  
670: add: WordReference.com, Apr. 12, 2001: \$b Spanish to English (alcalde: mayor; (juez) magistrate)

### Authority Record After

008/29 a

010 \$a sh 85082436

040 \$a DLC \$c DLC \$d DLC \$d WaU

053 0 \$a JS141 \$b JS163

150 \$a Mayors

450 \$a Alcaldes

550 \$w g \$a Municipal officials and employees

550 \$a Corregidores

670 \$a Amer. Heritage dict. of the Eng. lang., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: the mayor or chief judicial official of a Spanish town)

670 \$a Encarta world Eng. dict., via WWW, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde, pl. alcaldes: mayor: the mayor or chief magistrate of a town in a Spanish-speaking area)

670 \$a OED online, Apr. 12, 2001 \$b (alcalde: A magistrate of a town, a sheriff or justice, in Spain and Portugal)

670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (alcalde: an administrative and judicial officer in villages, towns, or districts in Spain and regions under Spanish influence; corregidor: a Spanish magistrate; esp.: the chief magistrate or governor of a town in Spain or the Spanish colonies)

670 \$a WordReference.com, Apr. 12, 2001: \$b Spanish to English (alcalde: mayor; (juez) magistrate)

# Classification

## *Why Submit Classification Proposals?*

### **Why Submit Classification Proposals?**

In much the same way that existing LC subject headings don't cover every topic on which a library may collect materials, the LC classification schedules have been developed to accommodate established disciplines and materials held in LC's collections. New disciplines and subdisciplines are constantly being developed and other libraries have very different collection development policies than the Library of Congress's. In a library using LCC, if the topic of a bibliographic resource does not have an explicit number in the classification schedules, the resource will likely be classified in a broader number, often the number in the schedule for "General works." This does a disservice to patrons looking for materials on a specific topic, since these materials will be mixed together with truly general materials and with other materials on other topics that also got lumped in the general number. Other materials on the same specific topic may end up classed in other numbers because no one number exists to gather these materials. By proposing a new number or range of numbers, SACO libraries help to better organize their library collections and provide a more finely developed framework within which to place new materials as they are acquired.

In areas of the schedules that instruct catalogers to Cutter alphabetically by topic A-Z, when a topic is not listed, many librarians simply use a Cutter for a broader term that is listed or else assign a Cutter that they create locally for the topic. A benefit of proposing such Cutters to be printed in LCC is that they will now be available for use by LC catalogers and other libraries. For libraries that rely heavily on copy cataloging and do not review every classification number, getting a Cutter established in LCC means that LC as well as other libraries will use the same number for a topic every time, helping to ensure a more uniform shelflist and making cataloging copy more reliable across libraries.

Terminology within a discipline changes over time, as does spelling of some technical terms. In the same way that change proposals for subject headings allow libraries to add cross-references or to change a heading to a more current form, classification change proposals allow libraries to keep the classification schedules up-to-date and to provide references in both the schedules and their indexes. In some areas, such as zoology and botany, taxonomic groups get renamed, merged with other groups, or even eliminated, and the LC classification should be modified to reflect currently accepted taxonomic standards.

## *Classification Proposals*

### **Classification Proposals**

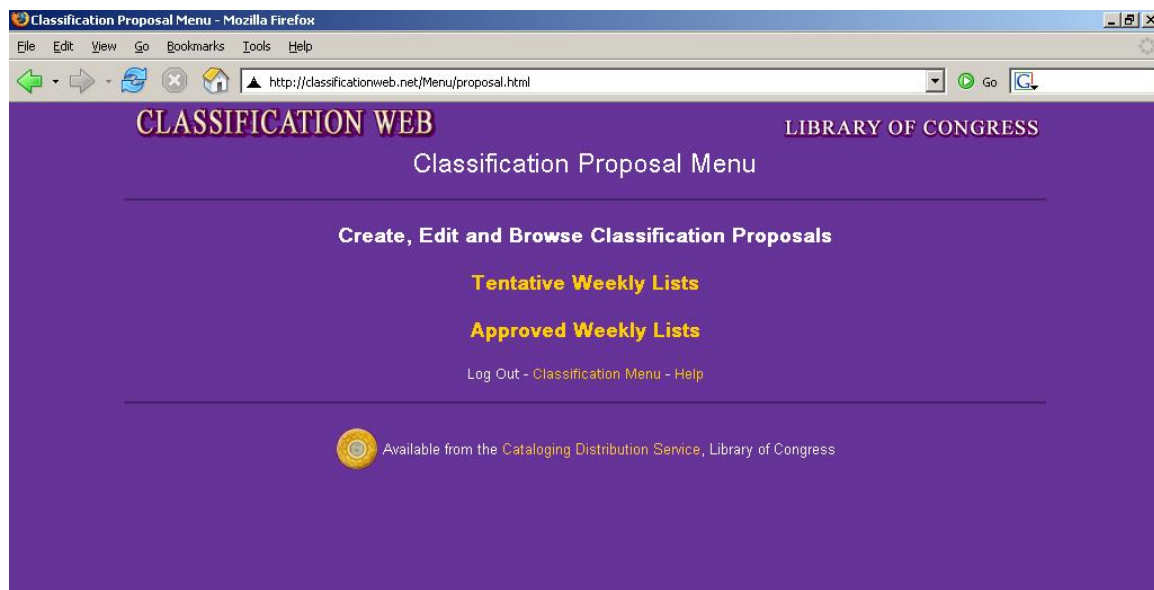
The *Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification* (SCM:C) provides detailed instructions on LC's classification policies and procedures. Catalogers should consult the SCM:C for detailed and up-to-date guidelines on establishing new classification numbers and on applying them to bibliographic resources. Instruction sheets in the SCM:C are numbered, and preceded with the letter F, e.g., F 275, Biography.

Proposals may be submitted for new classification numbers and for changes to existing numbers. A new proposal could consist of

- a Cutter number within an existing number,
- a single new number
- a range of numbers
- a completely new development within a schedule

Change proposals are most frequently made to alter an existing caption (the text that is next to, above, or below a number), to refer to other possible numbers, to make a number or numbers obsolete, and to provide cross-references from an unused term to a term used within a schedule.

In November 2006, a new online classification proposal system was instituted for subscribers to *Classification Web*. SACO participants who have *Classification Web* accounts are required to input classification proposals using *Class Web*. The *Classification Web* accounts for many institutions that contributed classification proposals prior to November 2006 have been enabled to use the new system. Institutions whose *Classification Web* accounts have not yet been enabled to use the system should contact the SACO Coordinator in the Cooperative Cataloging Team at LC.



Instructions on using the system, with examples, can be found on the SACO website at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.html>. The site includes the following documentation:

- General instructions – Proposing a New Class Number
- General instructions – Proposing a Modification to an Existing Class Number
- General instructions – Proposing a New See Reference or Confer Note

There are also seven examples of common types of proposals and how to create them in the new system:

- Creating a New Cutter Number
- Creating a New Single Whole or Decimal Number
- Creating a New Development with Multiple Consecutive Lines
- Changing a Caption
- Changing the Indention of Existing Captions
- Parenthesizing a Number and Creating a See Reference
- Creating a Cf. Note

Participants using the online proposal system must notify the Cooperative Cataloging Team that a proposal has been submitted. Send an email to the SACO account ([SACO@loc.gov](mailto:SACO@loc.gov)) and include your name, the classification number(s) proposed, and the corresponding caption(s).

Proposals can only be seen when logged in to the classification proposal system. They will not display in the regular *Classification Web* system. New proposals display in green, while change proposals display in brown.

## Classification Proposals

The illustration below shows a proposed new number SF293.N67 for North Swedish horse:

**Classification Proposal System**

[Refresh](#) [Menu](#) [Tables](#) [Logout](#) [Close](#) [Help](#)

LC Class #  [Go](#)

Animal culture--Horses--Breeds and breeding--By breed or type, A-Z--Suffolk horse

---

SF293.M34	Mangalarga horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.M56	Miniature horses [H R M P Ref]
SF293.M77	Morab horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.M8	Morgan [H R M P Ref]
SF293.M88	Murgese horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.M9	Mustang [H R M P Ref]
SF293.N55	Niigmiin khongor [H R M P Ref]
SF293.N66	Nonius horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.N67	North Swedish horse [H R P Ref]
SF293.N68	Novokirghiz [H R M P Ref]
SF293.O4	Oldenburger horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.O7	Orlov trotter horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P3	Palomino horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P37	Paso fino horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P4	Percheron [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P45	Peruvian paso horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P5	Pinto horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.P65	Posovac horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.Q3	Quarter horse [H R M P Ref]
	Cf. SF357.57-.575 Race horses [H R M P Ref]
SF293.R63	Rocky Mountain horse [H R M P Ref]
SF293.S12	Saddle horse [H R M P Ref]
	Saddlebred horse, American see SF293.A5 [H R M P Ref]

The following illustration shows a change proposal to add an “including” note under F868.P85:

**Classification Proposal System**

[Refresh](#) [Menu](#) [Tables](#) [Logout](#) [Close](#) [Help](#)

LC Class #  [Go](#)

United States local history--California--Regions, counties, etc., A-Z--Manzanar National Historic Site

---


F868.O6	Orange Co. [H R M P Ref]
	Including Balboa Island, Emerald Bay and region, Irvine Park
F868.O9	Owens River and Valley [H R M P Ref]
F868.P33	Pacific Coast [H R M P Ref]
	Pajaro River and Valley see F868.S3 [H R M P Ref]
	Pfeiffer Big Sur State Park see F868.M7 [H R M P Ref]
F868.P7	Placer Co. [H R M P Ref]
F868.P85	Plumas Co. [H R M P Ref]
F868.P85	Plumas Co. [H R M P Ref]
	Including Middle Fork Feather Wild and Scenic River
F868.P9	Point Reyes [H R M P Ref]
F868.R32	Rand Mining District [H R M P Ref]
F868.R4	Redwood National Park (Humboldt and Del Norte Counties) [H R M P Ref]
	Redwood Park (Santa Cruz Co.) see F868.S3 [H R M P Ref]
F868.R6	Riverside Co. [H R M P Ref]
	Including Coachella Valley, Lake Elsinore and regions, Moreno Valley, San Jacinto River and Valley, Temecula Creek and Valley, Mount San Jacinto State Park, San Gorgonio Pass
	Roosevelt-Sequoia National Park (Proposed) see F868.S4 [H R M P Ref]
	Round Valley see F868.M5 [H R M P Ref]
F868.R9	Russian River and Valley [H R M P Ref]
	Rustic Canyon see F868.L8 [H R M P Ref]

Contributors may only modify or delete their own proposals. Once a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list, it can no longer be modified or deleted by anyone other than CPSO. An existing, approved number cannot be deleted by a SACO participant, but they may input a change proposal to parenthesize it or to modify the caption associated with it.

Once a proposal has been assigned to a weekly list, contributors will be notified, if and only if they have filled out the email address box in the online proposal form. Tentative (unapproved) classification weekly lists are available on the SACO website at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html>. Participants who have provided their email address will also be notified when a proposal has been approved, rejected, or approved with modifications by the editorial meeting. Approved classification weekly lists are available on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page at <http://www.loc.gov/aba/cataloging/classification/weeklylists/>.

The illustrations below show a sample of the tentative and approved 2007 classification weekly list 5 for January 31, 2007.

The Library of Congress >> Cataloging >> PCC Home



SACO Home >> LC Classification Tentative List Find  in SACO Pages

### Library of Congress Classification Tentative (Unapproved) List 5 (January 31, 2007)

The full hierarchy is provided for new and revised classification captions to show their context within the classification. Numbers that appear in square brackets are not displayed in Classification Web browse screens or in the printed editions of the classification schedules. They are shown on this list only to indicate the location of the corresponding caption or reference within the classification. "(A)" indicates pre-approved proposals for material in priority 1. "(C)" indicates proposals submitted by libraries in the Subject Authority Cooperative Program (SACO).

---

**SACO contributors:**  
Send questions or comments to your SACO liaison on the Cooperative Cataloging Team.

---

B4235.N36	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Philosophy (General)</li> <li>Modern (1450/1660- )</li> <li>By region or country</li> <li>Russia</li> <li>By period</li> <li>19th and 20th centuries</li> <li>Special topics, A-Z</li> <li>Names</li> <li>Index:</li> <li>Names</li> <li>Philosophy</li> <li>Russian philosophy</li> <li>19th and 20th centuries: B4235.N36</li> </ul>
BM496.9.J35	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Judaism</li> <li>Sources</li> <li>Rabbinical literature</li> <li>Special topics, A-Z</li> <li>Jeremiah</li> <li>Index:</li> <li>Jeremiah</li> <li>Rabbinical literature: BM496.9.J35</li> </ul>
BR65.T366 Better: 1; Pattern: De pudicitia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Christianity</li> <li>Collected works</li> <li>Early Christian literature. Fathers of the Church, etc.</li> <li>Individual authors</li> <li>Tertullian, ca. 160-ca. 230</li> <li>Separate works. By title</li> <li>De praescriptione haereticorum</li> </ul>
BS680.A33	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Bible</li> <li>General</li> <li>Works about the Bible</li> <li>Topics (not otherwise provided for), A-Z</li> <li>Aesthetics</li> </ul>



<p>BT660.H34 Pattern: Heroldsbach (Germany)</p>	<p>Doctrinal theology Mary, Mother of Jesus Christ. Mariology Miracles. Apparitions. Shrines, sanctuaries, images, processions, etc. Special Other, A-Z Heede (Emsland, Germany)</p>
<p>BX8074.H87</p>	<p>Christian denominations Lutheran churches Other special, A-Z Human rights Index: Human rights Lutheran churches: BX8074.H87</p>
<p>(A)</p>	
<p>BX8787</p>	<p>Pentecostal churches Individual branches Ya?ltyop?ya qala ?eywat béta kerestiyán TABLE BX3 Index: Ya?ltyop?ya qala ?eywat béta kerestiyán: BX8787</p>
<p>DS113.8.A88</p>	<p>History of Asia Israel (Palestine). The Jews Ethnography. Tribes of Israel Other elements in the population, A-Z Austrian Jews Index: Austrian Jews in Israel: DS113.8.A88</p>
<p>DS156.A64</p>	<p>Asia Minor Ancient states, regions, cities, etc., A-Z Arykanda Index: Arykanda: DS156.A64</p>
<p>[GR316.7-.75]</p>	<p>Asia. The Orient Southeast Asia Singapore</p>
<p>GR316.7</p>	<p>General works</p>
<p>GR316.72.A-Z</p>	<p>Local, A-Z</p>
<p>GR316.75.A-Z</p>	<p>By ethnic group, A-Z</p>
<p>HD9999.C947-.C9474</p>	<p>Industries. Land use. Labor Special industries and trades Miscellaneous industries and trades, A-Z Cultural industries TABLE H21 Index: Cultural industries: HD9999.C947-.C9474</p>
<p>(C)</p>	

## Classification Proposals

### LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION WEEKLY LIST 05 (January 31, 2007)

The full hierarchy is provided for new and revised classification captions to show their context within the classification. Numbers that appear in square brackets are not displayed in Classification Web browse screens or in the printed editions of the classification schedules. They are shown on this list only to indicate the location of the corresponding caption or reference within the classification.

---

B4235.N36	Philosophy (General) Modern (1450/1660- ) By region or country Russia By period 19th and 20th centuries Special topics, A-Z Names
BM496.9.J35	Judaism Sources Rabbinical literature Special topics, A-Z Jeremiah (Biblical prophet)
BR65.T366	Christianity Collected works Early Christian literature. Fathers of the Church, etc. Individual authors Tertullian, ca. 160-ca. 230 Separate works. By title De praescriptione haereticorum
BS680.A33	The Bible General Works about the Bible Topics (not otherwise provided for), A-Z Aesthetics
BT660.H34	Doctrinal theology Mary, Mother of Jesus Christ. Mariology Miracles. Apparitions. Shrines, sanctuaries, images, processions, etc. Special Other, A-Z Heede (Emsland, Germany)
BX8074.H87	Christian denominations Lutheran churches Other special, A-Z Human rights
BX8787	Pentecostal churches Individual branches Ya'ityopyā qāla heywat béta kerestiyān TABLE BX3
DS113.8.A88	History of Asia Israel (Palestine). The Jews Ethnography. Tribes of Israel Other elements in the population, A-Z Austrian Jews
DS156.A64	Asia Minor Ancient states, regions, cities, etc., A-Z Arykanda

	Folklore
	By region or country
	Europe
	Balkan States. Southern Slavs
	By group not limited to one country, A-Z
GR250.5.T87	Turks
	For Turks in a particular country, see the country
	Asia. The Orient
	Southeast Asia
[GR316.7-.75]	Singapore
GR316.7	General works
GR316.72.A-Z	Local, A-Z
GR316.75.A-Z	By ethnic group, A-Z
	Industries. Land use. Labor
	Special industries and trades
	Miscellaneous industries and trades, A-Z
HD9999.C947-.C9474	Cultural industries TABLE H21

For those institutions that do not subscribe to *Classification Web*, the former paper-based proposal system may continue to be used. Guidelines for classification proposals are contained in SCM instruction sheet F 50. Proposals are made on a classification proposal form (see illustration, p. 188). The blank form can be copied as needed from this manual, and is also available on the SACO home page (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/imgs/classification.gif>). Basic instructions for filling out the form are also online (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/classification.html>); for complete instructions, catalogers should consult SCM F 50.

The proposal form may be filled out by typewriter or by hand. If a proposal is handwritten, use a pen or pencil that will fax well and be sure that the handwriting is clear and legible. Alternatively, one may download the GIF image of the form from the SACO home page and fill it out using a graphics editing program, such as Paintshop Pro or Adobe Photoshop. The completed form can then be printed out and faxed, or emailed, to SACO staff at LC.

There is also a PDF version of the classification proposal form available at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/classification.pdf>. Text may be typed into this form, but data entered cannot be saved; the form must be printed out and faxed to LC after it has been filled out.

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters:	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL    COOP	
		Pattern:	Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:	
Work Cat:			
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:	
		Quarterly No.:	
Coop. Library Code:	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:	

The following areas or boxes on the classification proposal form are mandatory to fill in:

Class Letters

Enter the letter(s) of the LC classification schedule for which the proposal is being made, e.g., N, DJK, QH. If the proposal is for a table in one of the schedules, also give the specific table designation, e.g., Table P-PZ20.

Page

Fill this in only if using the most current printed classification schedules published by LC. Leave this box blank if some other version of the schedules is used that does not give the pagination found in the print LC version, e.g., Gale's *Super LCCS*.

No Book, Book, NOL, COOP

Circle COOP.

Pattern

This box is used to show an existing number or range of numbers on which the new proposal is patterned. Cite as patterns only developments that are identical or similar to the new proposal in (1) terminology of the caption(s) and (2) location of the caption(s) in relation to surrounding lines. For developments in classes D, H, Q, and R that follow the models for those schedules (see SCM F 195), enter "D model," "H model," etc.

If a proposal is not based on an existing pattern or model, leave this box blank.

Work Cat.

Give a citation to the work being cataloged that generated the classification proposal. Cite the main entry, title, and date of publication in the same way as it would be cited in a subject authority record. No additional information is necessary.

Coop. Library Code

Put the proposing library's MARC 21 organization code in this box.

Class Number; Decimal; Cutters, Captions, Notes

The body of the classification form has three columns:

- The first column, **Class Number**, is used for whole numbers.
- The second column, **Decimal**, is used for decimals, and also for Cutter numbers. This column is also called the "aisle."

## *Classification Proposals*

- The third column, **Cutters, Captions, Notes**, is used for classification captions (the text that sits beside a number) and notes (e.g., "Class here" notes, "Including" notes, "Cf." (Confer) notes, "see" references).

SCM F 50 sec. 2 contains detailed instructions on how to format proposals for new numbers. The main concept that catalogers need to understand is the need to provide an **anchor point** so that it is clear where the new line or lines are to be located and aligned in relation to other numbers in the schedule. The anchor point is enclosed in square brackets and its caption can be abbreviated with the use of ellipses (...). An anchor point can be either above or below where the new line(s) are to be inserted into the schedule. Sometimes two anchor points are necessary, one to show alignment and one to show location. An example of this is given in the SCM.

The instructions for completing the classification form in SCM F 50 have become more and more obsolete now that all of the classification schedules have been converted to the MARC 21 classification format. The old form no longer fits with the appearance of the pages of the schedules. Catalogers using the paper form to make proposals for new numbers should try to fit the new style into the old form as best as they can. CPSO Classification Editorial Team staff are accustomed to adjusting proposals to fit the circumstances.

Most SACO proposals are made for new Cutter numbers within an existing classification. In the past, SACO participants were supposed to provide only the letter of the Cutter number when making a Cutter number proposal. CPSO's Classification Editorial Team (CLED) assigned the actual number. Participants using both *Classification Web* and paper proposal forms are now expected to provide a complete Cutter number. CLED editors may alter a proposed number based on 1) the tables in SCM G 60 sec. 3; 2) the Cutter numbers that have already been used in LC's shelflist within a given class number; and 3) judgment regarding what might need to be added to that number in the future. If a proposed number is altered, the SACO participant will see the revised number on the tentative and/or approved weekly lists.

### Other Boxes on the Classification Form

The other boxes found on the classification proposal form (i.e., **Better**, **Weekly List No.**, **Quarterly No.**, **Coop. Cat. Code**, and **CPSO Notes**) are for the use of LC and may be left blank. The **Better** box will be filled in by Cooperative Cataloging Team staff. It is used to indicate the approximate number of existing bibliographic records in the LC catalog that would be better classified in the newly proposed number(s). Although existing records are not normally reclassified, LCC editorial staff use this number to judge the impact of the new proposal on LC's shelflist. If a proposal would result in a great deal of disruption to an existing shelf arrangement, CPSO specialists consider whether the disruption is really worth doing, and if so, whether there would be a different way of achieving the same purpose that might preserve numbers in which significant amounts of material are already shelflisted.

The examples below illustrate SACO classification proposals for new whole numbers, for decimal numbers, and for Cutter numbers, for the benefit of those SACO participants who are not subscribers to *Classification Web*. *Classification Web* users should input their proposals in the online system, following the procedures and examples available on the SACO website (<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.html>). Participants who use the online proposal system may also find the examples below informative.

### **Changing or Cancelling Classification Numbers**

Section 3 of SCM F 50 provides detailed information on how to propose changes and cancellations to existing classifications. An asterisk is placed in front of an existing classification number, caption, or note that is being changed or eliminated. Anchor points are used the same way as they are in new classification proposals. For complex changes, such as the cancellation of a line, a change in number or indentation, etc., a parenthetical instruction is added below the line to be changed in order to provide a better explanation of what change(s) are being proposed. Examples of change proposals for participants who are not *Classification Web* subscribers are provided below. Participants who use the *Classification Web* online proposal system may also find the examples informative.

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Examples of Classification Proposals Using the Paper Proposal Form**

The examples below illustrate the types of classification proposals that may be made by SACO libraries. Each example illustrates a particular type of proposal, with explanations provided when needed. The examples include before and after views of the particular classification schedule affected by the proposal, along with a graphic of the actual proposal. In the before and after views, vertical ellipses (:) have been used to indicate parts of the schedule that have been omitted. These examples are for the benefit of SACO participants who make classification proposals but are not subscribers to *Classification Web*. However, participants who use the *Classification Web* online proposal system may also find the examples informative. *Classification Web* subscribers should use the online proposal system. Instructions and examples of *Classification Web* proposals are available on the SACO website at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassWeb/LCClassification.html>.

#### **Example A: New Cutter number**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Educational background of systems librarians.*

This example shows a proposal for a new Cutter number within a class. The work being cataloged is about systems librarians but there was no existing number in Z682.4 for this group. Accordingly, a proposal was made to establish a number for systems librarians. The anchor point for this proposal is Z682.4. Based on the LC Cutter Table and already established numbers the cataloger selects an appropriate Cutter number for Systems librarians and includes it in the proposal. The Cutter is placed with the decimal portion of the number in the aisle of the proposal form.

#### **BEFORE**

Z Libraries

    Z664.2-718.8 Library science. Information science

    Z682-682.35 Personnel

    Z682.4.A-Z Special groups, A-Z

Z682.4.A-Z	Special groups, A-Z
Z682.4.A25	Acquisitions librarians
Z682.4.A34	Administrators
	⋮
Z682.4.R44	Reference librarians
Z682.4.S37	Serials librarians
Z682.4.S65	Special librarians
Z682.4.S89	Student library assistants
Z682.4.T42	Teacher-librarians
Z682.4.V64	Volunteer workers
Z682.4.W65	Women
Z682.4.Y68	Young adult librarians



**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Z682.4.A-Z	Special groups, A-Z
Z682.4.A25	Acquisitions librarians
Z682.4.A34	Administrators
	⋮
Z682.4.R44	Reference librarians
Z682.4.S37	Serials librarians
Z682.4.S65	Special librarians
Z682.4.S89	Student library assistants
Z682.4.S94	Systems librarians
Z682.4.T42	Teacher-librarians
Z682.4.V64	Volunteer workers
Z682.4.W65	Women
Z682.4.Y68	Young adult librarians

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>Z</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>[682 .4.A-Z</b> <b>682 .4.S94</b>	<b>Special ...]</b> <b>Systems librarians</b>
Work Cat: Dorrian, J.M. Educational background of systems librarians, c1998.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

**Example B: New Cutter number plus see reference from one entry to another**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Cléobis et Biton*.

The work is a catalog of an exhibition about two characters in Greek mythology who were the sons of Cydippe, noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess. The characters are always cited together in reference books, generally as Cleobis and Biton. A number in BL820 is needed for this work, so a proposal is made for a Cutter under Cleobis and Biton. Since some reference books cite them as Biton and Cleobis, a cross-reference is made to refer catalogers from Biton to the number under Cleobis and Biton.

**BEFORE**

BL Religions. Mythology. Rationalism

BL700-820 Classical religion and mythology

BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z

BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z

*Including cults*

.A25 Adonis

.A3 Aeacus

⋮

.B2 Bacchus. Dionysus

.B28 Baucis and Philemon

.B64 Bona Dea

.C127 Cacus

.C13 Cadmus

⋮

.C57 Chimera

.C6 Circe

.C65 Cupid. Eros

.C7 Curetes

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

BL820 Special deities and characters of classical mythology, A-Z

*Including cults*

.A25 Adonis

.A3 Aeacus

⋮

.B2 Bacchus. Dionysus

.B28 Baucis and Philemon

Biton see BL820.C62

.B64 Bona Dea

.C127 Cacus

.C13 Cadmus

⋮

.C57 Chimera

.C6 Circe

.C62 Cleobis and Biton

.C65 Cupid. Eros

.C7 Curetes

*Classification Proposal Examples*

**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>BL</b>	Page: <b>17</b>	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>[820</b>	<b>.A-Z</b>
	<b>820</b>	<b>.C62</b>
<b>Special deities ...]</b> <b>Biton see BL820.C62</b> <b>[...]</b> <b>Cleobis and Biton</b>		
Work Cat: <b>Cléobis et Biton, 1995.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>NjP</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

**Example C: New Cutter number in a table; pattern cited**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *La novela histórica chilena dentro del marco de la novelística chilena, 1843-1879.*

The work being cataloged is about the 19th century Chilean historical novel. A new subject heading is proposed: **Historical fiction, Chilean**. Chilean literature is classed in PQ7900-8098.436, using literature table P-PZ20. In that table, for history and criticism, there is an existing number for historical fiction, so the work cataloged gets classified as PQ8007.H5. Although not required, because the number is not needed for the work being cataloged, the library decides to establish a number in the table for collections of historical fiction. The classification proposal cites the pattern found elsewhere in the table. Once the Cutter number in the table is approved by LC, the full class number for collections of Chilean historical fiction can be determined, and this number can then be added to the subject authority record for **Historical fiction, Chilean**.

**BEFORE**

PQ Romance literatures  
 PQ6001-8929 Spanish literature  
 PQ7900-8098.436 Chile (Table P-PZ20)

**P-PZ20 Table for Literature (200 Nos.)**

	History and criticism
	Periodicals. Societies. Serials
0	Periodicals
1	Yearbooks
2	Societies
	⋮
	Prose. Fiction
97	General works
99	Early to 1800
101	19th century
103	20th century
104	Short stories
107.A-Z	Special topics, A-Z
107.A39	Adventure
107.A45	Alienation (Social psychology)
107.A53	Amazon River Region
	⋮
107.G74	Grotesque
107.H5	Historical fiction
107.I5	Immigrants
	⋮
	Collections
130	Periodicals
133	Comprehensive collections
	⋮
	Prose
173	General prose collections

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

174.A-Z	Special. By form or subject, A-Z
174.A96	Autobiographies
174.C48	Children
174.G83	Guadalajara (Mexico)
174.M67	Motherhood
174.T7	Travel
174.W65	Women
	Fiction
175	General collections
176	Short stories
	⋮
176.5.A-Z	Special. By form or subject, A-Z
176.5.C37	Carnival
176.5.C57	Christmas stories
176.5.C58	City and town life
176.5.D43	Death
176.5.D48	Detective and mystery stories
176.5.E75	Erotic stories
	⋮
176.5.G37	Gays
176.5.G45	Ghost stories
176.5.H63	Hockey stories
176.5.H67	Horror tales

### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

176.5.A-Z	Special. By form or subject, A-Z
176.5.C37	Carnival
176.5.C57	Christmas stories
176.5.C58	City and town life
176.5.D43	Death
176.5.D48	Detective and mystery stories
176.5.E75	Erotic stories
	⋮
176.5.G37	Gays
176.5.G45	Ghost stories
176.5.H57	Historical fiction
176.5.H63	Hockey stories
176.5.H67	Horror tales

### **SUBJECT AUTHORITY WITH CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS FOR HISTORY AND CRITICISM AND COLLECTIONS**

053 0	\$a PQ8007.H5 \$c History
053 0	\$a PQ8076.5.H57 \$c Collections
150	\$a Historical fiction, Chilean
450	\$a Chilean historical fiction
550	\$w g \$a Chilean fiction
670	\$a Löfquist, E. La novela histórica chilena dentro del marco de la novelística chilena, 1843-1879, 1995.

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>Table P-PZ20</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern: <b>107.H5 (Table P-PZ20)</b> Better:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>[176 176</b>	<b>.5.A-Z .5.H57</b> <b>Special ...] Historical fiction</b>
Work Cat: <b>Löfquist, E. La novela histórica chilena ... 1995.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>UKCU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example D: New Cutter number; hierarchical Cutters**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *"Permanent, faithful, stable" : Christian same-sex partnerships.*

The work is about same-sex marriages within the context of the Church of England. Within the BX schedule there are several numbers for marriage, but nothing specific for same-sex marriage. In the absence of such a number, the only possible choice is the number for general works, but this is too broad, so a proposal is made to establish a new number for same-sex marriage. In this particular classification there are hierarchical Cutters. The topic "Marriage" is broken down into subtopics, but the alphabetic portion of the Cutter for all of them stays the same (.M for marriage). The subtopics within the main topic are arranged alphabetically by the numeric portion of the Cutter. This kind of example is atypical, since most Cutter lists are not hierarchical.

#### **BEFORE**

BX Christian denominations

BX5011-5743.52 Church of England

BX5148-5149 Sacraments, etc.

BX5149.A-Z Individual, A-Z e.g.

Sacraments, etc.

*Theology, liturgy, rite*

BX5148

General works

BX5149.A-Z

Individual, A-Z e.g.

BX5149.B2

Baptism

BX5149.C5

Communion. Eucharist

BX5149.C6

Confession and absolution

BX5149.C7

Confirmation

Marriage

BX5149.M2

General works

BX5149.M3

Divorce

BX5149.M4

Remarriage

BX5149.O7

Ordination

BX5149.P4

Penance

#### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Sacraments, etc.

*Theology, liturgy, rite*

BX5148

General works

BX5149.A-Z

Individual, A-Z

BX5149.B2

Baptism

BX5149.C5

Communion. Eucharist

BX5149.C6

Confession and absolution

BX5149.C7

Confirmation

Marriage

BX5149.M2

General works

BX5149.M3

Divorce

BX5149.M4

Remarriage

BX5149.M5

Same-sex marriage

BX5149.O7

Ordination

BX5149.P4

Penance



LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>BX</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
[5149 5149]		.M4 .M5  <b>[Marriage]</b> <b>[...]</b> <b>Remarriage]</b> <b>Same-sex marriage</b>
Work Cat: John, J. "Permanent, faithful, stable", c1993.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example E: New whole number; anchor point above**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Beaufort Inlet and Gordon Inlet : estuaries of the Jerramungup Shire.*

The work is about two inlets that are estuaries along the southwestern coast of Western Australia. An examination of the schedules shows that the work should be classified in GC within the numbers for the Indian Ocean, but there is no number that deals with Australia, so a new number is proposed for this. Otherwise, the only possible choice is GC721 for general works, which is too broad. The specific choice of number proposed is somewhat arbitrary, but leaves room for additional new numbers before and after as needed.

#### **BEFORE**

GC Oceanography  
GC401-881 Oceanography. By region  
GC721-761 Indian Ocean

	Indian Ocean
GC721	General works
GC731	Arabian Sea
GC741	Red Sea
GC751	Persian Gulf
GC761	Bay of Bengal
	Pacific Ocean
GC771	General works

#### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

	Indian Ocean
GC721	General works
GC731	Arabian Sea
GC741	Red Sea
GC751	Persian Gulf
GC761	Bay of Bengal
GC765	Australian coast
	Pacific Ocean
GC771	General works

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters:  <b>GC</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>[761</b>  <b>765</b></p>		<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Bay of Bengal]</b>  <b>Australian coast</b></p>
Work Cat: <b>Beaufort Inlet and Gordon Inlet, 1988.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code:  <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example F: New whole number; anchor point below**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *The star\*s family of astronomy and related resources--the starpages.*

The work being cataloged is a Web-based directory of astronomy and astronomers.

This proposal illustrates the creation of a new whole number. It also illustrates the use of an anchor point below where the new number will be placed. Since the placement of the number for "Directories" is based on the model for the Q schedule shown in SCM F 195, "Q model" is cited as the pattern used.

#### **BEFORE**

QB Astronomy

QB34.5	Women in astronomy. Women astronomers Biography
QB35	Collective
QB36.A-Z	Individual, A-Z e.g.
QB36.B8	Brahe
QB36.C8	Copernicus
QB36.G2	Galileo
QB41	Early works through 1700 Cf. GA6, Cosmography Cf. VK551, Navigation (early works) General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks Cf. QB500, Descriptive astronomy
QB42	1701-1800
QB43	1801-1969
QB43.2	1970-

#### **MODEL FOR THE Q SCHEDULE**

Periodicals, societies, congresses, serial publications  
Voyages and expeditions  
Dictionaries and encyclopedias  
Communication of [...] information  
    Information services  
    [...] literature  
    Abstracting and indexing  
    Language. Authorship  
    Translating. Translating services  
Philosophy  
Nomenclature, terminology, notation, abbreviations  
Classification  
History  
    By region or country, A-Z  
Biography  
    Collective  
    Individual, A-Z  
Directories  
Early works [...]

General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks  
Elementary textbooks  
Pictorial works and atlases  
[...] illustration  
Popular works  
Juvenile works  
Recreations  
[...] as a profession. Vocational guidance  
Study and teaching. Research  
    Outlines, syllabi  
    Problems, exercises, examinations  
    Experiments  
    Laboratory manuals  
Laboratories  
    Individual laboratories, A-Z  
Technique  
Instruments and apparatus  
Collecting and preservation  
Museums. Exhibitions  
Handbooks, tables, formulas, etc.  
Miscellany and curiosa

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

QB34.5      Women in astronomy. Women astronomers  
              Biography  
QB35         Collective  
QB36.A-Z     Individual, A-Z e.g.  
QB36.B8      Brahe  
QB36.C8      Copernicus  
QB36.G2      Galileo  
QB40         Directories  
QB41         Early works through 1700  
              Cf. GA6, Cosmography  
              Cf. VK551, Navigation (early works)  
              General works, treatises, and advanced textbooks  
              Cf. QB500, Descriptive astronomy  
QB42         1701-1800  
QB43         1801-1969  
QB43.2       1970-

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QB</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern: <b>Q model</b> Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<b>40</b> <b>[41</b>		<b>Directories</b> <b>Early ...]</b>
Work Cat: The Star's family of astronomy and related resources ... via <a href="http://www">www</a> .		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

**Example G: New decimal number; anchor point above**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Tabletop hockey.*

This book on tabletop hockey generated both a new subject heading and the need for a new classification number. Within the games area in GV there are sections of numbers for board games, computer games, video games, and fantasy games, but no specific area set aside for tabletop games. There is, however, a specific number for foosball, a table soccer game. Since these two games are related, a proposal is made to situate tabletop hockey beneath foosball with its own number. A new decimal number is needed, but the specific choice of number is somewhat arbitrary. The proposal selects a number that leaves room for new games on either side.

**BEFORE**

GV Recreation. Leisure  
GV1199-1570 Games and amusements  
GV1221-1469.35 Indoor games and amusements

	Video games
	Cf. TK6681, <i>Video game equipment</i>
GV1469.3	General works
	⋮
GV1469.4	Foosball
GV1469.6	Fantasy games

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

	Video games
	Cf. TK6681, <i>Video game equipment</i>
GV1469.3	General works
	⋮
GV1469.4	Foosball
GV1469.45	Tabletop hockey
GV1469.6	Fantasy games

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>GV</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
		Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<b>[1469 1469</b>	<b>.4 .45</b>	<b>Foosball] Tabletop hockey</b>
Work Cat: <b>Peden, G. Tabletop hockey, 2000.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>CaOONL</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:



**Example H: New decimal number; pattern cited**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Moskovskii arkhiv Ministerstva iustitsii i russkaia istoricheskaia naukarkhivisty i istoriki vo vtoroi polovine XIX-nachale XX veka.*

Translation of title: *The Moscow archive of the Ministry of Justice and Russian historical science : archivists and historians in the 2nd half of the 19th to the beginning of the 20th century.*

A number is needed for records of the Russian Ministry of Justice. An examination of the order of existing captions in CD1721-1733.3 shows that it is primarily arranged alphabetically by ministry. This arrangement is confirmed by an existing pattern elsewhere in the same schedule (in this case, under France). Based on this information, the placement of the new number for Justice between already existing numbers for Interior and Navy is established. Since there are no whole numbers available, a decimal number must be proposed. The choice of specific decimal is somewhat arbitrary and could just as easily have been another number such as .3 or .4.

**BEFORE**

CD Diplomats. Archives. Seals

CD921-4280 Archives

CD995-4280 History and statistics

CD1000-4280 By region or country

CD1000-2000 Europe

CD1710-1739.5 Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)

CD1710-1739.5

Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)

Other national government records, by ministry, office, etc.

CD1721

Agriculture and land

CD1723

Communications and transport

CD1724

Council of ministers

CD1725

Finance

CD1726

Foreign affairs

CD1728

Interior

CD1729

Navy

CD1730

Education

CD1731

Senate

CD1732

Defense. Military archives of the General Staff

CD1733

Literature and the arts

CD1733.2

Science and technology

CD1733.3

History. Central Party Archives

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **PATTERN**

CD1190-1219.5	France
	Other national government records, by ministry, office, etc.
CD1201	Foreign affairs
CD1202	Agriculture
CD1203	Colonies
CD1204	Commerce
CD1205	Finance
CD1206	Defense
CD1207	Education
CD1208	Interior
CD1209	Justice
CD1210	Marine
CD1211	Public works
CD1213.A-Z	Bureaus, A-Z

### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

CD1710-1739.5	Russia. Soviet Union. Russia (Federation)
	Other national government records. By ministry, office, etc.
CD1721	Agriculture and land
CD1723	Communications and transport
CD1724	Council of ministers
CD1725	Finance
CD1726	Foreign affairs
CD1728	Interior
CD1728.5	Justice
CD1729	Navy
CD1730	Education
CD1731	Senate
CD1732	Defense. Military archives of the General Staff
CD1733	Literature and the arts
CD1733.2	Science and technology
CD1733.3	History. Central Party Archives

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>CD</b>	Page: <b>26</b>	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern: <b>CD1209</b> Better:
Class Number:		Decimal:    Cutters, Captions, Notes:
[1728 1728		.5 <b>Interior]</b> <b>Justice</b>
Work Cat: <b>Shokhin, L.I. Moskovskii arkhiv Ministerstva iustitsii ... 1999.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>NNC</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example I: New decimal number; anchor point below**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Catalogo del Museo civico di Belluno.*

No number exists for the Museo civico di Belluno, so a new number for the city of Belluno and the Museo civico is proposed. The city must fit alphabetically into the existing schedule, so a decimal number between N2515.5 and N2516 is needed. The number selected is somewhat arbitrary, but must leave room for future additions on either side. The anchor point chosen was the number below where the new number is to be inserted, but in this particular case it could just as easily have been the number above.

#### **BEFORE**

N Visual arts

N400-3990 Art museums, galleries, etc.

N510-3990 Special countries and special museums

N1010-3690 Europe

N2510-3070 Italy

Italy

N2510	Collective
	Ancona
N2513	Museo nazionale
N2513.5	Pinacoteca comunale Francesco Podesti
N2515	Aquileia. Museo archeologico
N2515.2	Arezzo. Museo
N2515.4	Bari (Province). Pinacoteca provinciale
N2515.5	Bassano del Grappa. Museo civico
N2516	Benevento. Museo del Sannio
N2517	Bergamo. Accademia Carrara

#### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Italy

N2510	Collective
	Ancona
N2513	Museo nazionale
N2513.5	Pinacoteca comunale Francesco Podesti
N2515	Aquileia. Museo archeologico
N2515.2	Arezzo. Museo
N2515.4	Bari (Province). Pinacoteca provinciale
N2515.5	Bassano del Grappa. Museo civico
N2515.8	Belluno. Museo civico
N2516	Benevento. Museo del Sannio
N2517	Bergamo. Accademia Carrara

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>N</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<b>2515</b> <b>[2516]</b>	<b>.8</b>	<b>Belluno. Museo civico</b> <b>Benevento. Museo del Sannio]</b>
Work Cat: <b>Catalogo del Museo civico di Belluno, 1983-1997.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example J: New decimal number; caption including explanatory note**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Insect parasitoids.*

There is no specific number in the schedule for insects that covers the concept of parasitic insects and parasitoids. In the absence of such a number, the only place to put works on this subject is the number for general works, treatises, and textbooks on insects, which the cataloger deems is too broad and would prevent books on parasitic insects from being shelved together. The solution is to propose a new number. Since there is no pattern available for where to place this, the cataloger chooses one based on judgment. The proposal is made for the concept of parasitism in insects, but an explanatory note is included that makes clear that this is where parasitic insects and parasitoids should be classed.

#### **BEFORE**

QL Zoology

QL360-599.82 Invertebrates

QL434-599.82 Arthropoda

QL461-599.82 Insects

QL492.5	Immunology
QL493	Genetics
QL493.5	Molecular entomology
QL494	Anatomy and morphology
QL494.4	Metamorphosis
QL494.8	Cytology
	Physiology
QL495	General works
QL495.5	Development
QL496	Behavior. Social life. Instinct
QL496.15	Population dynamics
QL496.2	Migration
QL496.4	Ecology
QL496.5	Sound and sound production
QL496.7	Flight
QL497	Miscellany and curiosa

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

QL492.5	Immunology
QL493	Genetics
QL493.5	Molecular entomology
QL494	Anatomy and morphology
QL494.4	Metamorphosis
QL494.8	Cytology
	Physiology
QL495	General works
QL495.5	Development
QL496	Behavior. Social life. Instinct
QL496.12	Parasitism
	Including parasitic insects and parasitoids
QL496.15	Population dynamics
QL496.2	Migration
QL496.4	Ecology
QL496.5	Sound and sound production
QL496.7	Flight
QL497	Miscellany and curiosa

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QL</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>[496 496</b>	<b>.12</b>
		<b>Behavior ...] Parasitism Including parasitic insects and parasitoids</b>
Work Cat: <b>Insect parasitoids, 1994.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:



**Example K: Whole and decimal numbers; pattern cited**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Polar museums directory.*

This proposal shows the addition of both a whole number and a decimal number. The work cataloged is a Web-based directory of museums about polar regions. The library cataloging this publication classifies electronic resources, so it needs to assign a classification number to it. There is no number for museums under polar regions, so the only place for it would be general works. However, general works is clearly too broad in this case. A useful pattern is found under Antarctic regions. In that part of the schedule, the numbers for museums and exhibitions fall between the numbers for juvenile works and history. While there is no number under polar regions for juvenile works, there is one for history, so using the pattern the new numbers are placed above history. Since there is only one whole number available in that area of the schedule, at least one of the numbers proposed must be a decimal. The actual choices of numbers are somewhat arbitrary.

**BEFORE**

- G Geography (General)
  - G575-635 Arctic and Antarctic regions
    - G575-599 Polar regions
      - Polar regions
        - Including both poles*
        - G575 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
        - G576 Collected works (Nonserial)
        - G578 Congresses
        - G580 History
        - Biography
          - G584 Collective
          - G585 Individual, A-Z

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **PATTERN**

- Antarctic regions. Antarctic exploration
- G845 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
- G845.5 Congresses
- G846 Collected works (Nonserial)
- G850 Voyages. By date
  - Further divided by explorer, traveler, expedition or ship, A-Z*
- G855 Dictionaries. Encyclopedias
- G860 General works
- G863 Juvenile works
- Museums. Exhibitions
- G864 General works
- G865 By region or country, A-Z
- History
- G870 General works
- G872 Exploration. By nationality, A-Z
- Biography
- G874 Collective
- G875 Individual, A-Z

### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

- Polar regions
  - Including both poles*
- G575 Periodicals. Societies. Serials
- G576 Collected works (Nonserial)
- G578 Congresses
- Museums. Exhibitions
- G579 General works
- G579.3 By region or country, A-Z
- G580 History
- Biography
- G584 Collective
- G585 Individual, A-Z

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>G</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern: <b>G864-865</b> Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	[578 579 579 .3	<b>Congresses]</b> <b>Museums. Exhibitions</b> <b>General works</b> <b>By region or country, A-Z</b>
Work Cat: <b>Mills, W.J. Polar museums directory, via WWW.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example L: Multiple decimal numbers; pattern cited**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Clean air express : air quality resource manual for teachers.*

The subject heading assigned to this work is:

**Air -- Pollution -- Study and teaching -- Washington (State) -- Puget Sound Region.**

There is no number for study and teaching under air pollution, but there are similar numbers established elsewhere, e.g., under water pollution. Using the pattern found under water pollution, a proposal is made that consists of multiple numbers for study and teaching of air pollution, even though for the bibliographic record only the number for study and teaching in Washington State is needed.

#### **BEFORE**

TD Environmental technology. Sanitary engineering

TD878-898.8 Special types of environment

TD881-890 Air pollution and its control

Air pollution and its control

Cf. HC79.A4, *Economic aspects*

Cf. QC882+, *Atmospheric pollutants*

Cf. QH545.A3, *Influence on plants and animals*

Cf. QP82.2.A3, *Physiological effect*

Cf. RA576+, *Public health*

TD881 Periodicals, societies, congresses, etc.

TD881.5 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

TD882 Directories

TD883 General works

TD883.1 General special

TD883.13 Juvenile works

TD883.14 Addresses, essays, lectures

TD883.15 Research

#### **PATTERN**

Water pollution

Cf. GC1080+, *Marine pollution*

Cf. QH545.W3, *Effect on plants and animals*

Cf. RA591+, *Public health*

TD419 Periodicals. Societies. Serials

TD419.5 Congresses

TD420 General works

TD422 Juvenile works

TD423 General special

Study and teaching

TD424 General works

By region or country

United States

TD424.3 General works

TD424.35.A-Z By region or state, A-Z

TD424.4.A-Z Other regions or countries, A-Z

TD424.5 Research

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

- Air pollution and its control
  - Cf. HC79.A4, *Economic aspects*
  - Cf. QC882+, *Atmospheric pollutants*
  - Cf. QH545.A3, *Influence on plants and animals*
  - Cf. QP82.2.A3, *Physiological effect*
  - Cf. RA576+, *Public health*
- TD881 Periodicals, societies, congresses, etc.
- TD881.5 Dictionaries and encyclopedias
- TD882 Directories
- TD883 General works
- TD883.1 General special
- TD883.13 Juvenile works
- TD883.14 Addresses, essays, lectures
- Study and teaching
- TD883.143 General works
  - By region or country
  - United States
- TD883.144 General works
- TD883.145.A-Z By region or state, A-Z
- TD883.148.A-Z Other regions or countries, A-Z
- TD883.15 Research

*Classification Proposal Examples*

**LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM**  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters:  <b>TD</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern: TD424-424.5    Better:
Class Number:		Decimal:    Cutters, Captions, Notes:
883 .143  883 .144 883 .145.A-Z 883 .148.A-Z [883 .15		<b>Study and teaching</b> <b>General works</b> <b>By region or country</b> <b>United States</b> <b>General works</b> <b>By region or state, A-Z</b> <b>Other regions or countries, A-Z</b> <b>Research]</b>
Work Cat: <b>Clean air express, 1996.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code:  <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

**Example M: Changing a caption**

This proposal illustrates a simple change of a caption. The asterisk next to the Cutter in the proposal is an indication that something in this line is being changed. A parenthetical note below explains what the change is.

In this case, the cataloger finds a caption that uses out of date terminology. Under Z688.B54 the caption found is Biological chemistry. This was once a valid LC subject heading, but the current form of this heading is Biochemistry. Although the subject heading was changed, the old term was left unchanged in the Z classification schedule. The proposal seeks to bring the caption into line with the current LC subject heading. No change to the Cutter number is needed because the change in caption does not affect the alphabetical position of this line with the others above and below it. Also note that no “work cat.” needs to be cited on the proposal form in this particular case, since this proposal is being made simply to align terminology between LCSH and LCC.

**BEFORE**

Z Libraries  
Z664.2-718.8 Library science. Information science  
Z687-718.8 The collections. The books  
Z688.A1-Z Special collections  
Z688.A5-Z Special, A-Z

Z688.A5-Z Special, A-Z  
Z688.A54 Africa  
:  
Z688.B52 Big books (Children's books)  
Z688.B54 Biological chemistry  
Z688.B55 Birth control

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Z688.A5-Z Special, A-Z  
Z688.A54 Africa  
:  
Z688.B52 Big books (Children's books)  
Z688.B54 Biochemistry  
Z688.B55 Birth control

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>Z</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>[688 *688</b>	<b>.A5-Z .B54      Special ...] Biochemistry (<u>Change</u> caption.)</b>
Work Cat:		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:



**Example N: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Prescribed burning on Wyoming rangeland.*

After examining the SF classification schedule, the cataloger decides that a number already exists under "Fire management" that is appropriate to use for prescribed burning, but that the caption under that number should be augmented to make this clear. In addition, a see reference from "Prescribed burning" to the number for "Fire management" will help direct catalogers to the correct location. The asterisk next to .F57 indicates that a change is being made to something on that line and the parenthetical instruction explains what the change is. The bracketed ellipses show that there are lines in the schedule that are not included in the proposal and have been skipped over, and that no changes to them are being made. A second anchor point is used to ensure the correct placement of the see reference.

**BEFORE**

SF Animal culture  
SF84.82-85.6 Rangelands. Range management. Grazing  
SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z

SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z  
SF85.6.D43 Decision making  
*Including decision support systems*

SF85.6.E82 Evaluation  
SF85.6.F57 Fire management  
SF85.6.M36 Mapping  
SF85.6.P56 Photography  
SF85.6.R45 Remote sensing

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

SF85.6.A-Z Special topics, A-Z  
SF85.6.D43 Decision making  
*Including decision support systems*

SF85.6.E82 Evaluation  
SF85.6.F57 Fire management. Prescribed burning  
SF85.6.M36 Mapping  
SF85.6.P56 Photography  
Prescribed burning, see SF85.6.F57  
SF85.6.R45 Remote sensing

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters:  SF	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>	
		Pattern:	Better:
Class Number:		Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
		[85 .6.A-Z * 85 .6.F57]	Special topics, A-Z Fire management. Prescribed burning  (Change caption.)  [...]  Prescribed burning, see SF85.6.F57
		[85 .6.R45]	Remote sensing]
Work Cat: Smith, M.A. Prescribed burning on Wyoming rangeland, 1985.			
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:	
		Quarterly No.:	
Coop. Library Code:  WaU	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:	

**Example O: Changing (adding to) a caption and adding a see reference across a range of numbers**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Ornamental vines for Florida.*

This proposal is similar to the previous one, but there is a range of numbers involved, unlike the previous example in which the see reference is in a single classification made up of multiple Cutters.

In the particular case here, the LC subject heading used for vines is "Climbing plants." This has a place in the schedule, but there is no reference in the schedule from vines. Since this term might be sought by a cataloger, a proposal is made to add "Vines" to the caption with "Climbing plants" and to add a see reference in the place where vines would be put alphabetically if it were to have its own number.

**BEFORE**

SB Plant culture

SB403-450.87 Flowers and flower culture. Ornamental plants

SB421-439.8 Classes of plants

Classes of plants

*For works limited to specific genera, species, etc., see SB413.A+*

SB421 Alpine plants. Rock-garden plants

⋮

SB426 Chalk and limestone garden plants and gardens

SB427 Climbing plants

Damp garden plants, see SB423.3

SB427.5 Desert plants. Desert gardening

⋮

SB438.8 Variegated plants

Wild plants. Wild flowers. Native plants

*Including landscaping with native plants, natural landscaping, and natural gardens*

SB439 General works

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Classes of plants

*For works limited to specific genera, species, etc., see SB413.A+*

SB421 Alpine plants. Rock-garden plants

⋮

SB426 Chalk and limestone garden plants and gardens

SB427 Climbing plants. Vines

Damp garden plants, see SB423.3

SB427.5 Desert plants. Desert gardening

⋮

SB438.8 Variegated plants

Vines, see SB427

Wild plants. Wild flowers. Native plants

*Including landscaping with native plants, natural landscaping, and natural gardens*

SB439 General works

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>SB</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
Pattern:		Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<b>* 427</b>		<b>Climbing plants. Vines</b> <b>(<u>Change</u> caption.)</b> <b>[ ... ]</b>
<b>[438</b>	<b>.8</b>	<b>Variegated plants]</b> <b>Vines, see SB427</b>
Work Cat: Dickey, R.D. Ornamental vines for Florida, 1968.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

**Example P: See references for pseudonyms of literary authors**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Tenpō no yuki.*

In many cases, the classification number established for a literary author has not been printed in the P classification schedules, but can be found in the name authority record for the author or in LC’s online shelflist. LC policy is to class works by or about an author who writes under several pseudonyms in the single number that has been established for that author, regardless of the name under which the work being cataloged has been entered. For authors who use pseudonyms, SCM F 632 instructs catalogers to submit a proposal to have the literary author number printed in the appropriate P schedule together with see references from all pseudonyms. The pseudonyms need not be authorized as access points to be printed in the classification schedules.

Other categories in which LC will print a literary author or work number in the P schedules include: literary authors whose name changes significantly due to changes in cataloging rules, marital status, etc.; literary authors born before 1875; anonymous works published before 1899.

In the particular case in this example, the author Mariko Ichihara has a pseudonym, Mariko Aida. The cataloger submits a proposal to print the literary author number established for Ichihara (PL871.5.C54) and a see reference from the place in the schedule where Aida would be classed if the single number established for this author had been under that name.

**BEFORE**

PL Languages of Eastern Asia, Africa, Oceania  
 PL700-889 Japanese literature  
 PL867-878 Heisei period, 1989-

	Heisei period, 1989-	
PL867.A-Z	A	Anonymous works. By title, A-Z Subarrange each work by Table P-PZ43
PL867.5	A	The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
PL868	B	The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
PL868.5	Ch	The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
	⋮	
PL871.5	I	The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
PL872	J	The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

PL867.A-Z	Heisei period, 1989- Anonymous works. By title, A-Z Subarrange each work by Table P-PZ43
PL867.5	A The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40 Aida, Mariko, 1961- see PL871.5.C54
PL868	B The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
PL868.5	Ch The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
⋮	
PL871.5	I The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40
PL871.5.C54	Ichihara, Mariko, 1961- Table P-PZ40
PL872	J The author number is determined by the second letter of the name Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>PL</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	[867 .5	A] [The author number is determined by the second letter of the name] [Subarrange each author by Table P-PZ40] Aida, Mariko, 1961- see PL871.5.C54 [...]
	[871 .5 871 .5.C54	I] Ichihara, Mariko, 1961- Table P-PZ40
Work Cat: Ichihara, M. Tenpō no yuki, 2000.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: NNC-EA	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example Q: Creating a new number and changing the indentation of a range of numbers beneath it**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Proceedings of the Third Australasian Fisheries Managers Conference, Rottnest Island, Western Australia, 2-4 August 1995.*

There are numbers in the fisheries schedule for Australia, New Zealand, and Oceania, but no number is available for Australasia, the broader region encompassing all of these places. A search through the S schedule does not turn up any other developments that can be used as a pattern. The cataloger proposes a new number for Australasia, and at the same time proposes that the indentation of captions beneath it for parts of the Australasian region be changed.

#### **BEFORE**

SH Aquaculture. Fisheries. Angling  
SH201-400.8 Fisheries  
SH219-321 By region or country

Australia  
SH317 General works  
SH318.A-Z Local, A-Z  
SH318.5 New Zealand  
Pacific Islands. Oceania  
SH319.A2 General works  
SH319.A3-Z By island or group of islands, A-Z  
SH319.C66 Cook Islands  
SH319.F5 Fiji Islands  
SH319.F73 French Polynesia  
SH319.G88 Guam  
:  
SH319.W45 Western Samoa  
SH319.2.A-Z Indian Ocean islands, A-Z

#### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

Australasia  
SH316 General works  
Australia  
SH317 General works  
SH318.A-Z Local, A-Z  
SH318.5 New Zealand  
Pacific Islands. Oceania  
SH319.A2 General works  
SH319.A3-Z By island or group of islands, A-Z  
SH319.C66 Cook Islands  
SH319.F5 Fiji Islands  
SH319.F73 French Polynesia  
SH319.G88 Guam  
:  
SH319.W45 Western Samoa  
SH319.2.A-Z Indian Ocean islands, A-Z



LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>SH</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:                      Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
	<b>316</b>	<b>Australasia</b>
		<b>General works</b>
	<b>* 317</b>	<b>*Australia</b>
		<b>(Change indention of line and all subsequent lines through SH319.W45.)</b>
		<b>General works</b>
		<b>[...]</b>
<b>[319</b>	<b>.2.A-Z</b>	<b>Indian Ocean islands, A-Z]</b>
<b>Work Cat: Proceedings of the Third Australasian Fisheries Managers Conference ... 1996.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example R: Splitting one number into multiple numbers**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Wildflowers of Kuwait.*

This example illustrates how one number can be broken up into multiple numbers. In this case, a single number, QK353, is used for botany of all the various countries on the Arabian Peninsula. The cataloger questions why this is so. There are many works devoted to the botany of just one of the countries in that region, and all other countries of the world are allocated their own number(s) or Cutter in the botany schedule. The proposal submitted retains the existing number for general works covering the entire Arabian Peninsula, but establishes separate numbers for each country. The proposal as submitted includes a parenthetical note that clearly indicates that it is a revision of QK353.

A separate proposal is made to change the see references elsewhere in the schedule from Kuwait and Saudi Arabia, and to add additional see references for the other countries of the region.

#### **BEFORE**

QK Botany

QK101-474.5 Geographical distribution. Phytogeography

QK108-474.5 Topographical divisions

QK341-379.5 Asia

Asia

QK341 General works

QK352 Afghanistan

QK353 Arabian Peninsula

Including Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, Bahrain, Yemen, etc.

QK354 Baluchistan

⋮

QK379 Iraq

Kuwait, see QK353

Saudi Arabia, see QK353

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

- QK341      Asia
- QK352      General works
- Afghanistan
- Arabian Peninsula
- QK353      General works
- QK353.2    Bahrain
- QK353.3    Kuwait
- QK353.4    Oman
- QK353.5    Qatar
- QK353.6    Saudi Arabia
- QK353.7    United Arab Emirates
- QK353.8    Yemen
- QK354      Baluchistan
- ⋮
- QK379      Iraq
- Bahrain, see QK353.2
- Kuwait, see QK353.3
- Oman, see QK353.4
- Qatar, see QK353.5
- Saudi Arabia, see QK353.6
- United Arab Emirates, see QK353.7
- Yemen, see QK353.8

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QK</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
		Better:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
[352 353 353 .2 353 .3 353 .4 353 .5 353 .6 353 .7 353 .8		( <b>Revision of QK353</b> )  <b>Afghanistan]</b> <b>Arabian Peninsula</b> <b>General works</b> <b>Bahrain</b> <b>Kuwait</b> <b>Oman</b> <b>Qatar</b> <b>Saudi Arabia</b> <b>United Arab Emirates</b> <b>Yemen</b>
Work Cat: <b>Shuaib, L. Wildflowers of Kuwait, c1995.</b>		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QK</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
		Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<b>[379</b>		<b>Iraq]</b> <b>Bahrain, see QK353.2</b> <b>* Kuwait, see QK353.3</b> <b>Oman, see QK353.4</b> <b>Qatar, see QK353.5</b> <b>* Saudi Arabia, see QK353.6</b> <b>United Arab Emirates, see</b> <b>    QK353.7</b> <b>Yemen, see QK353.8</b>  <b>(Change see references.)</b>
Work Cat:		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **Example S: Extensive revisions**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *A community-dependent association between the chiton Katharina tunicata and the alga Schizymenia pacifica.*

When a proposed change is so extensive or complicated that it is difficult or cumbersome to use asterisks and instruction lines, the proposal can be formatted as a revision (see SCM F 50 sec. 3c). A parenthetical instruction is placed at the top of the proposal stating to substitute the proposed revision for the existing classification, but no additional asterisks or instruction lines are used within the body of the proposal.

This particular proposal illustrates a case where a proposal is made to split one number into multiple numbers. Based on the work cataloged, a classification number is needed for the chiton species above. A single number in the zoology schedule, QL430.1, represents a taxonomic group, Amphineura, made up of chitons and solenogasters. In the course of doing authority work to establish the subject heading for Katharina tunicata, the cataloger discovers that the group Amphineura is no longer recognized as valid and that the chitons and solenogasters are classified by zoologists in two separate classes of mollusks, the Polyplacophora and the Aplacophora. The cataloger proposes that QL430.1 be broken up into several numbers to accommodate the two taxonomic classes, as well as providing for a specific Cutter number for each family that exists in these classes. Katharina tunicata will class in the number for the family to which it belongs, Mopaliidae. In this particular case, QL430.1 was retained in the schedule rather than being canceled, but with a different caption, because most works already classed there in the LC shelflist were about chitons and solenogasters. The books on solenogasters would not then need to be reclassified if a library decided to reclass its materials on these two groups based on the new numbers.

#### **BEFORE**

QL Zoology  
  QL360-599.82 Invertebrates  
    QL401-432 Mollusca  
      QL430.1-432 Systematic divisions  
          Systematic divisions  
QL430.1      Amphineura (Chitons; solenogasters)  
QL430.15    Monoplacophora

**AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

	Systematic divisions
	Aplacophora (Solenogasters)
QL430.1	General works and orders
QL430.12.A-Z	By family, A-Z
QL430.12.P76	Proneomeniidae
	Polyplacophora (Chitons)
QL430.13	General works and orders
QL430.14.A-Z	By family, A-Z
QL430.14.A26	Acanthochitonidae
QL430.14.C47	Chitonidae
QL430.14.I83	Ischnochitonidae
QL430.14.M64	Mopaliidae
QL430.15	Monoplacophora

*Classification Proposal Examples*

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QL</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
		Better:
Class Number:	Decimal:	Cutters, Captions, Notes:
		<b>(Substitute the following revision for QL430.1.)</b>
		<b>[Systematic divisions]</b>
		<b>Aplacophora (Solenogasters)</b>
		<b>General works and orders</b>
		<b>By family, A-Z</b>
		<b>Proneomeniidae</b>
		<b>Polyplacophora (Chitons)</b>
		<b>General works and orders</b>
		<b>By family, A-Z</b>
		<b>Acanthochitonidae</b>
		<b>Chitonidae</b>
		<b>Ischnochitonidae</b>
		<b>Mopaliidae</b>
	<b>430 .1</b>	
	<b>430 .12.A-Z</b>	
	<b>430 .12.P76</b>	
	<b>430 .13</b>	
	<b>430 .14.A-Z</b>	
	<b>430 .14.A26</b>	
	<b>430 .14.C47</b>	
	<b>430 .14.I83</b>	
	<b>430 .14.M64</b>	
<b>Work Cat:</b> Soulanille, E.L. A community-dependent association ... the chiton <i>Katharina tunicata</i> ... 1999.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:



**Example T: Canceling (invalidating) a number**

**Title of Work Cat.:** *Synopsis of biological data on the grunts Haemulon aurolineatum and H. plumieri (Pisces:Haemulidae).*

The subject authority file contains a see reference from the fish family name Haemulidae to the subject heading Grunts (Fishes). The classification number given in that authority record is QL638.P772. The caption in the classification schedule for that number is Pomadasyidae (Grunts). Further research on the discrepancy between the book in hand and both the authority record and classification schedule shows that the family Pomadasyidae is no longer considered valid and that the correct current name for this family is Haemulidae. Because of this, the existing Cutter under Pomadasyidae should be cancelled and a new Cutter established under the correct family.

Cancelled numbers are not generally deleted from the classification schedule. Instead, the cancelled numbers are enclosed in parentheses, and a see reference is added to the caption directing the cataloger to the number that should be used. The classification proposal requests a new Cutter under QL638.H23 and then also shows the changes to be made to the old number. A parenthetical instruction makes it clear what is needed.

Note that in addition to this classification proposal, LC should be alerted to change the 053s on any subject authority records that had the obsolete number.

While in this case the existing Cutter was cancelled, LC makes a decision to cancel based on the amount of material classed under a number.

**BEFORE**

- QL Zoology
  - QL605-739.8 Chordates. Vertebrates
    - QL614-639.8 Fishes
      - QL637.9-638.95 Systematic divisions
        - QL638.A-Z Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z
- QL638.A-Z Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z
  - Class here works on species, genera, and families*
  - QL638.A15 Acanthoclinidae
  - QL638.A2 Acanthuridae (Surgeonfishes)
  - QL638.A25 Acipenseridae (Sturgeons)
  - ⋮
  - QL638.G95 Gyrinocheilidae
  - QL638.H25 Halosauridae
  - ⋮
  - QL638.P77 Pomacentridae (Damsel-fishes)
  - QL638.P772 Pomadasyidae (Grunts)
  - QL638.P778 Pomatomidae (Bluefishes)

## *Classification Proposal Examples*

### **AFTER PROPOSAL IS APPROVED**

QL638.A-Z	Osteichthyes (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z <i>Class here works on species, genera, and families</i>
QL638.A15	Acanthoclinidae
QL638.A2	Acanthuridae (Surgeonfishes)
QL638.A25	Acipenseridae (Sturgeons)
	⋮
QL638.G95	Gyrinocheilidae
QL638.H23	Haemulidae (Grunts)
QL638.H25	Halosauridae
	⋮
QL638.P77	Pomacentridae (Damsel­fishes)
(QL638.P772)	Pomadasyidae (Grunts), see QL638.H23
QL638.P778	Pomatomidae (Bluefishes)

LC CLASSIFICATION PROPOSAL FORM  
 Copy, complete, and fax to: Coop Cat (202) 707-2824

Class Letters: <b>QL</b>	Page:	No Book    Book    NOL <b>COOP</b>
		Pattern:
Class Number:		Decimal: Cutters, Captions, Notes:
<p style="text-align: right;"><b>[638 .A-Z    Osteichthyes ...]</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>638 .H23    Haemulidae (Grunts)</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>* (638 .P772)    Pomadasyidae (Grunts), see QL638.H23</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>(Parenthesize "QL638.P772"; change line to reference.)</b></p>		
Work Cat: Darcy, G.H. Synopsis of biological data on the grunts ... (Pisces:Haemulidae), 1983.		
For Classification Editorial Use:		Weekly List No.:
		Quarterly No.:
Coop. Library Code: <b>WaU</b>	Coop. Cat. Code:	CPSO Notes:

## **Glossary of Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms**

**AACR2** - *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd ed., 1998 revision (and subsequent amendments)

**AC** - Annotated Card. Annotated Card subject headings are a separate supplemental set of juvenile headings used by the Library of Congress and by some other libraries with collections of children's literature. AC headings are included in a separate section of the printed *Library of Congress Subject Headings* and are also searchable in the authority file in **OCLC**, where they are labelled [CHILDREN'S] in brief and truncated lists. AC authority records are identified by a value **b** in fixed field 008/11 (**Subj:** in OCLC) and **LCCNs** that begin with the prefix **sj**.

**Aisle** - The second column on classification proposals, labeled "Decimal" and used for decimal numbers, and in some schedules, also for Cutter numbers, is called the "aisle."

**Anchor Point** - The anchor point is the line or lines taken from an existing classification schedule that show where the newly proposed lines are to be located and aligned in relation to what is already present.

**Backdoor Heading** - A heading consisting of a main heading combined with either a **free-floating** or geographic subdivision that would normally not need to be represented by a specific authority record. Authority records are created for backdoor headings only because they are needed for the reference structure of another heading, or as the initial element of a longer heading/subdivision string. An example is **Plains--California**, which is used as a broader term reference on the heading **Carrizo Plain (Calif.)**. All **BT** and **RT** references (5XX's) in subject authority records must be represented by their own authority records. **SACO** participants must supply appropriate BT and/or RT references on their proposals, but they are not required to submit separate proposals for backdoor headings. **LC** staff in **SHed** will create authority records for backdoor headings as needed.

**BFM** - Bibliographic file maintenance. **SACO** participants are not required to identify bibliographic records in LC's catalog that should be changed as a result of a subject or classification proposal. **LC Coop. Cat.** staff, upon receiving a **SACO** proposal, search the LC database to determine if any subject headings on existing records should be changed. However, if in the process of doing authority research **SACO** participants happen to identify LC bibliographic records needing changes, it would be helpful to include that information (e.g., the **LCCNs** of the records) along with any submitted proposals.

**BGN** - U.S. Board on Geographic Names. **LC** headings for place names generally follow the forms established by BGN. These forms are available for searching on the Web through the **GNIS** (U.S. and Antarctic names) and **GNS** (all other countries) databases.

**BIBCO** - The monographic bibliographic record component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. BIBCO participants may submit their **SACO** proposals via a Web form. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/bibco/bibco.html>

**BT** - Broader Term. A heading that has a broader hierarchical or inclusive relationship to another subject heading. Broader term references are recorded in MARC 21 authority records in 5XX fields with a subfield \$w value **g**.

**CDS** - Cataloging Distribution Service, **LC**. CDS distributes LC bibliographic and authority records to utilities and other subscribers, and publishes a variety of cataloging documentation, including the print and electronic forms of **LCSH**, **SCM**, **LCC**, etc. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/cds/>

**CLED** - Classification Editorial Team, **CPSO**

**CONSER** - Cooperative Online Serials Program. The serials bibliographic record component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/acq/conser/>

**Control Subfield \$w** - Subfield \$w is used in MARC 21 authority records to indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of 4XX and 5XX references. The \$w value **ne** is used in 4XX fields to indicate that a term was once the established form of the heading. In 5XX fields, the \$w value **g** is used to indicate that the heading is a broader term. The absence of a control subfield \$w in 5XX indicates that the heading is a related term.

**Coop** - see **Coop. Cat.**

**Coop. Cat.** - Cooperative Cataloging Team, **RCCD**. Also called Coop or Coop Team.

**Coop. Cat. Liaison** - the staff person in **Coop. Cat.** assigned as the liaison to the **SACO Coordinator** of an institution or **funnel project**. The liaison communicates information about changed and/or approved SACO proposals to the SACO Coordinator and also serves as an intermediary between the SACO library and the **editorial meeting**.

**CPSO** - Cataloging Policy and Support Office, **LC**. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/aba/>. Email: [cpsol@loc.gov](mailto:cpsol@loc.gov)

**Division of the World** - **SCM** instruction sheet H 405 contains lists of certain types of problematic named entities and whether they are established as name authorities through **NACO** according to descriptive cataloging conventions (**AACR2**, **LCRI**) or as subject authorities through **SACO** according to subject cataloging rules (SCM). This is the "division of the world" of named entities. A tabular version of H 405 can be found on the SACO home page under the title "Alphabetic list of ambiguous entities."

## *Glossary*

**Earlier Form of Heading** - A bracketed phrase found on **Weekly Lists** adjacent to a term that is no longer the authorized form of a subject heading. When the authorized term in an authority record (**MARC 21** field 1XX) is changed, the previously authorized term is usually retained in the authority record as a cross-reference (4XX). To indicate that the term was once the authorized form, the 4XX field will also contain a control subfield \$w coded with the value **nne**. On weekly lists, this displays after appropriate cross-references as [EARLIER FORM OF HEADING]. In the printed and electronic *Library of Congress Subject Headings* an earlier form of a heading is indicated by the bracketed phrase [*Former heading*].

**Editorial Meeting** - see **Weekly Lists**

**Establish** - An instruction in the **SCM** to "establish" a heading means that a subject authority record must be created for it, i.e., submit a **SACO** proposal for it.

**Free-floating Subdivision** - a topical, form, or chronological subdivision that is usable, if appropriate and no conflict exists, under designated types of headings, or in the case of free-floating subdivisions established under specific pattern headings, under any other heading belonging to its category. **SCM** instruction sheets H 1095-H 1200 contain lists of general and pattern-based free-floating subdivisions. Subject authority records are not normally created for topic--free-floating subdivision combinations. The exceptions are **backdoor headings**. **SACO** libraries may make proposals for new or changed free-floating subdivisions as needed.

**Funnel Project** - a group of libraries (or catalogers from various libraries) that have joined together to contribute authority records to the national authority file(s). Funnel participants usually work in a specific subject area (e.g., Africana Subject Funnel Project; Art NACO; American Theological Library Association Funnel), with specific forms or languages of material (e.g., Arabic Funnel; NACO Music Project; OLAC (AV NACO) Funnel), or they may be regionally based (e.g., North Dakota Funnel; CALICO South Africa Funnel Project). Some projects fall into multiple categories. Funnel projects are an efficient means of contribution, in which one person or institution coordinates the project. There may be members at all levels of expertise; however, **LC** deals solely with the coordinator.

**GNIS** - Geographic Names Information System. A Web-based database from the U.S. Geological Survey for U.S. and Antarctic place names as approved by **BGN**. URL: <http://geonames.usgs.gov/domestic/index.html>

**GNS** - *GEOnet Names Server*. A Web-based database from the National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA) for foreign (non-U.S.) place names as approved by **BGN**. URL: <http://earth-info.nga.mil/gns/html/index.html>

**LC** - Library of Congress. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/>

**LCC** - *Library of Congress Classification*

**LCCN** - Library of Congress Control Number. A unique identifier that appears in the 010 field of each **LC** bibliographic, name authority, and subject authority record. Subject authority records have a prefix beginning with **sh** (LCSH) or **sj** (Annotated Card (juvenile) subject headings). Subject heading proposals on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix **sp**. Records for subject headings in existence before November 1985 have the prefix **sh 85** and records for headings created December 1985 to December 1986 begin with the prefix **sh 86**. Records created since 1987 have the year of creation in the prefix (e.g., **sh 87** for 1987 and **sh 00** for 2000); in 2001, the form of year in the prefix changed from two digits to four (e.g., **sh2001**).

**LCRI** - *Library of Congress Rule Interpretations*

**LCSH** - *Library of Congress Subject Headings*

**MARC** - **Machine-Readable Cataloging**. URL of MARC home page:  
<http://www.loc.gov/marc/>

**MARC Organization Code** - A short alphabetic code used to identify libraries and other agencies worldwide. Each **SACO** library must have a code assigned to it (see the **Introduction** for further information). The code is used to identify the library responsible for a subject or classification proposal and is carried in the 040 field of **MARC 21** authority records. A complete list of codes is published by **CDS** as *MARC Code List for Organizations*. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/>

**MARC 21** - The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of authority, bibliographic, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form. The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* is designed to be a carrier for information concerning the authorized forms of names, subjects, and subject subdivisions to be used in constructing access points in **MARC** records, the forms of these names, subjects, and subject subdivisions that should be used as references to the authorized forms, and the interrelationships among these forms. MARC authority records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code **z** (Authority data) in Leader/06 (Type of record).

**NACO** - Name Authority Cooperative Project. A component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/naco/naco.html>

**NAF** - LC/NACO Authority File

**NT** - Narrower Term. A heading that has a narrower hierarchical or less inclusive relationship to another subject heading. Narrower terms are not explicitly recorded in **LC MARC 21** subject authority records but do display in the printed and electronic versions of the *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.

## *Glossary*

**OCLC** - Online Computer Library Center, an international cataloging utility and provider of cataloging copy and authority records. URL: <http://www.oclc.org/>

**Organization Code** - see **MARC Organization Code**

**Orphan Heading** - A subject heading that has no **BT**. Orphan headings are generally prohibited in **LCSH**, but there are a limited number of situations in which they are permitted, which are outlined in **SCM H 370**.

**PCC** - Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/>

**RCCD** - Regional and Cooperative Cataloging Division, **LC**

**RLG** - Research Libraries Group, was an international non-profit membership organization of libraries, archives, historical societies, and museums and one of the largest cataloging utilities and providers of cataloging copy and authority records in North America through its RLG Union Catalog and the RLIN21 client and Web interface. In June 2006, RLG member institutions approved a proposal to combine operations with **OCLC**, beginning July 1, 2006. The RLG Union Catalog will be integrated into OCLC's WorldCat. URL: <http://www.rlg.org>

**RLIN21** - RLIN21 was the software used to create and input records in the RLG Union Catalog and LC/NACO Authority File. **RLG** and **OCLC** merged on July 1, 2006, and RLG's online products and services will be integrated with OCLC's.

**RT** - Related Term. A heading that has a relationship that is other than hierarchical with another subject heading. Related term references are recorded in **MARC 21** authority records in 5XX fields with no subfield \$w.

**SA** - See Also; also known as See also reference. General see also references are recorded in **MARC 21** authority records in field 360.

**SACO** - Subject Authority Cooperative Program. A component of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. URL: <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/saco.html>

**SACO Coordinator** - The person responsible for reviewing all SACO proposals from a particular institution or **funnel project** prior to submitting them to **Coop. Cat.**

**SACO Mentor** - An experienced SACO contributor from outside the Library of Congress who is available to provide advice to new contributors and to review SACO proposals. A list of mentors is available on the SACO Web site.

**SACOLIST** - An electronic discussion list devoted to SACO announcements and discussions among SACO participants. See the **Introduction** for further information.



**SCM** - Subject Cataloging Manual. Issued by the Library of Congress in loose-leaf and electronically in *Cataloger's Desktop* in three separate parts: *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings* (SCM:SH), *Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification* (SCM:C), and *Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelving* (SCM:SL). Each section of pages on a specific topic in the manuals is called an instruction sheet (they are also informally referred to as memos). Instruction sheets in the SCM:SH are numbered beginning with the letter H, e.g., H 1334, Buildings and Other Structures. Instruction sheets in the classification part of the manual begin with F and in the shelving part with G.

**sh** - One of three prefixes used in the **LCCNs** of subject authority records. Subject authority records that are approved and valid for use have the prefix **sh**. The prefix **sh** is also used in 010 fields of newly proposed subjects that are still in process, but these records will also have the legend “[proposed]” at the end of the 1XX field.

**SHed** - Subject Heading Editorial Team, **CPSO**

**sj** - One of three prefixes used in the **LCCNs** of subject authority records. An **sj** prefix indicates that the subject heading is an approved Annotated Card (juvenile) subject heading that is valid for use in bibliographic records for children's literature.

**sp** - One of three prefixes used in the **LCCNs** of subject authority records. An **sp** prefix in a local 019 field indicates that the subject heading is still in the proposal stage and has not yet been approved. Proposed authority records with this prefix reside only in the LCSH Master Database and the LC Database. **LCCNs** of proposals shown on tentative and approved weekly lists have the prefix **sp**.

**Subfield \$w** - see Control Subfield \$w

**Summary of Decisions** - This is the formal name for the minutes of the weekly **editorial meetings**, which may include notes about policies decided at the meetings, explanations of decisions taken, and frequently, lists of subdivisions to be added to the free-floating subdivision lists in the **SCM**. The summaries also contain announcements of new MARC language codes and changes to the MARC language code list. Summaries of decisions, if present, are found at the end of approved **weekly lists** posted on the **CPSO** Web site. They are distributed by email through **SACOLIST** and are cumulated online at the **SACO** Web site.

**UF** - Used For; also known as Use reference. A reference from a term that is not valid for use as a subject heading to a term that represents the valid, authorized form of the heading. Used for references are recorded in **MARC 21** authority records in 4XX fields.

**Weekly Lists** - **SACO** proposals and proposals from **LC** catalogers are grouped on separate subject heading and classification lists that are reviewed in **CPSO** and considered at weekly editorial meetings. There are two versions of a weekly list: tentative and approved. Tentative (i.e., under consideration and not yet approved) lists are posted to the **SACO** home page at <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/tentative/twls.html>

## *Glossary*

(**LCSH**) and <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/pcc/saco/ClassTentative/twlc.html> (**LCC**) a week or two before the editorial meeting for that list. Weekly lists of new and changed subject headings and classification numbers approved by the editorial meetings are posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions home page at <http://www.loc.gov/aba/>. Caution is advised in consulting weekly lists because proposed headings on tentative lists may be revised or not approved at the editorial meeting for that list, and because diacritics and special symbols do not display on either the tentative or approved lists.

**Work cat.** - Work cataloged. In both subject heading and classification proposals, the phrase **Work cat.:** precedes the citation of the work being cataloged that generated the proposal. In MARC 21 subject authority records the citation to the work cataloged is recorded in the first 670 field.

## Appendix A. Additional Examples of SACO Proposals for New LCSH

The examples below provide an additional sampling of successful SACO proposals. Fields that are found on the SACO proposal form but not used in specific proposals have been omitted. Since it is not always possible to send diacritics and special characters over email, the examples follow the recommended practice of including the name of the diacritic or character in parentheses in front of the letter to which it belongs. The examples are arranged by 1XX tag, then within each tag by alphabetical order of the proposed heading.

### 100 (Personal Name)

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a InU \$b eng \$c DLC

100 3 \$a Eliseev family

400 3 \$a Elis(left ligature)i(right ligature)ev family

670 \$a Work cat.: Eliseevy, 1998.

670 \$a (dot above)En(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. slov. biog. \$b (Eliseevy; Elis(left ligature)i(right ligature)evy; Russian noble family)

670 \$a Bol. (dot above)en(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. \$b (Eliseev; several persons listed)

670 \$a Mal. sov. (dot above)en(left ligature)t(right ligature)s. \$b (Eliseev; 2 people listed)

675 \$a Am. fam. names; \$a Cent. pop. growth

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a NNC \$c DLC

100 3 \$a Gediminas, House of

400 3 \$a House of Gediminas

551 \$w g \$a Lithuania \$x Kings and rulers

670 \$a Work cat.: Udil(miagkii znak)ni kn(left ligature)i(right ligature)azivstva R(left ligature)i(right ligature)urykovychiv i Hedyminovychiv u XII-XVI st., 1996.

670 \$a Britannica: \$b v. 10, p. 47, under Gediminas, Grand Duke of Lithuania, c. 1275-c. 1341 (Gediminas dynasty)

670 \$a Lietuvi(hacek)skoj tarybin(dot above)e encik.: \$b v. 4, p. 24-25 (Gediminas)

670 \$a RLIN, 26 March 1997 \$b (Gediminas, House of)

952 \$a SCM H 1574

Backdoor heading created by LC:

151 \$a Lithuania \$x Kings and rulers

## Appendix A

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a MH-P \$b eng \$c DLC

100 3 \$a Ikshvaku dynasty

400 3 \$a Sriparvatiya dynasty

551 \$w g \$a India \$x Kings and rulers

670 \$a Work cat: Rajendra Babu, B.S. Material culture of Deccan, 1999: \$b subtitle (with special reference to Satavahana-Ikshvaku period) p. 15 (out of the ruins of the Satavahana kingdom came a dynasty known as the Ikshvakus; the puranas call them the Sriparvatiyas; they ruled for 57 years)

675 \$a Britannica Macro.

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

100 0 \$a Jesus Christ \$x Black interpretations

670 \$a Browne, P. Inklings of a black Christ, 1997.

952 \$a LC pattern: Jesus Christ--Indian interpretations

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a NmU \$b eng \$c DLC

100 3 \$a Restrepo family

400 3 \$a L(acute)opez de Restrepo family

500 3 \$a Lopez family

670 \$a Work cat.: Don Marcelino Restrepo y Restrepo, su vida y su descendencia, 1999: \$b front cover flap (Asociaci(acute)on Familia Restrepo; begun in 1998 by descendents of the founders of the family in Colombia) p. 17 (Don Alonso L(acute)opez de Restrepo, from whom descend almost all of the Restrepos in Colombia today) p. 13 (in this epoch [c. 1700] the first surname was omitted, simplifying to one, de Restrepo)

670 \$a World biog. index, Web ed.

670 \$a Hispanic surnames and family history, 1996: \$b p. 245 (Restrepo) p. 300 (Restrepo or L(acute)opez de Restrepo)

675 \$a Am. fam. names; \$a Cent. pop. growth

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add **Restrepo family** as RT on the heading **Lopez family**.

110 (Corporate Name)

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a UkOxU \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a 30 Saint Mary Axe (London, England)

410 2 \$a 30 St. Mary Axe (London, England)

410 2 \$a Gherkin (London, England : Building)

410 2 \$a Swiss Re Tower (London, England)

550 \$w g \$a Office buildings \$z England

670 \$a Work cat.: Powell, K. 30 St Mary Axe, c2006.

670 \$a 30 St Mary Axe WWW home page, Feb. 27, 2006: \$b fact file (opened at the end of May 2004; private office block; the official name of the building is 30 St Mary Axe)

670 \$a WordiQ.com, Feb. 27, 2006 \$b (30 St Mary Axe is a building in the City of London; it has been variously nicknamed the Gherkin, the Erotic Gherkin, the Crystal Phallus and the Towering Innuendo; the primary occupant of the building is Swiss Re reinsurers which leads to the building's other common name, the Swiss Re Tower)

670 \$a GreatBuildings.com, Feb. 27, 2006 \$b (30 St Mary Axe; commercial office tower, skyscraper; the Swiss Re tower, nicknamed the Gherkin for its tall, rounded, pickle-like shape)

952 \$a SCM Appendix A, 15 and 16

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a 390 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)

410 2 \$a Gorham Building (New York, N.Y.)

410 2 \$a Russek's Furs (New York, N.Y. : Building)

550 \$w g \$a Commercial buildings \$z New York (State)

670 \$a Work cat.: Gorham Building, 1998: \$b p. 1 (Gorham Building; loc. at 390 Fifth Avenue, Manhattan; built 1904-05)

670 \$a AIA guide to New York City, 1988: \$b p. 214 (390 Fifth Avenue; formerly Russek's Furs; originally Gorham Building)

670 \$a Wolfe, G.R. New York, a guide to the metropolis, c1994: \$b p. 236 (Gorham Manufacturing Company; building on south west corner of Fifth Avenue)

952 \$a SCM H 1334

## Appendix A

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a InU \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)

410 2 \$a Simon Music Library and Recital Center (Bloomington, Ind.)

550 \$w g \$a College buildings \$z Indiana

550 \$w g \$a Library buildings \$z Indiana

670 \$a Work cat.: Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center, 1995: \$b t.p. (Indiana University, School of Music)

952 \$a LC pattern: Woodburn Hall (Bloomington, Ind.)

952 \$a SCM H 1334

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a InU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Library buildings \$z Indiana

670 \$a Work cat.: Bess Meshulam Simon Music Library and Recital Center, 1995.

Note: **College buildings \$z Indiana** is already set up in authority file, so a backdoor heading proposal for it is not needed.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a ItFiC \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne (Venice, Italy)

410 2 \$a C(grave)a Littoria (Venice, Italy)

410 2 \$a C(grave)a Matteotti (Venice, Italy)

410 2 \$a Littoria, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)

410 2 \$a Matteotti, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)

410 2 \$a Michiel delle Colonne, C(grave)a (Venice, Italy)

550 \$w g \$a Palaces \$z Italy

670 \$a Work cat.: 2006385172: Da C(grave)a Littoria a C(grave)a Matteotti, c2006: \$b front flap (C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne, historic palace on Grand Canal in Venice, during the fascist period called C(grave)a Littoria and after the second World War called C(grave)a Matteotti, now again with the original name)

670 \$a Convegno internazionale di scienza e beni culturali (16th : 2000 : Bressanone, Italy?). Abstracts del Convegno internazionale di scienza e beni culturali, anno 2000, via WWW, Apr. 20, 2006 \$b (C(grave)a Michiel delle Colonne)

952 \$a LC pattern: C(grave)a Granda (Venice, Italy)

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Dunstaffnage Castle (Scotland)

550 \$w g \$a Castles \$z Scotland

670 \$a Work cat.: Grove, D. Dunstaffnage Castle & Chapel, 2004: \$b p. 4  
(Dunstaffnage Castle stands on a promontory on the southern shore of Loch Etive where it meets the Firth of Lorn)

670 \$a Historic Scotland Web site, 26 Apr. 2006: \$b places to visit (Dunstaffnage Castle)

670 \$a The Internet guide to Scotland, 26 Apr. 2006: \$b castles A-Z (Dunstaffnage Castle, near Oban)

670 \$a Wikipedia, 26 Apr. 2006 \$b (Dunstaffnage Castle is a castle ruin of Argyllshire, Scotland, 3 miles N.N.E. of Oban)

952 \$a LC pattern: Drumlanrig Castle (Scotland)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a DNA \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Griffith Stadium (Washington, D.C.)

410 2 \$a American League Park (Washington, D.C.)

410 2 \$a Beyer's Seventh Street Park (Washington, D.C.)

410 2 \$a Clark Griffith Park (Washington, D.C.)

410 2 \$a National Park (Washington, D.C.)

550 \$w g \$a Stadiums \$z Washington (D.C.)

670 \$a Work cat.: President Harry S. Truman attending a baseball game, Griffith Stadium, Washington, DC, 1948 Aug. 17.

670 \$a Ballparks.com WWW site, Oct. 11, 2005 \$b (Griffith Stadium; Washington, D.C.; home of the Washington Senators baseball team; original stadium opened 1891; rebuilt 1911 by Osborne Engineering; demolished, 1965; also known as American League Park, Beyer's Seventh Street Park, National Park and Clark Griffith Park)

952 \$a LC pattern: Robert F. Kennedy Memorial Stadium (Washington, D.C.)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Harvard University \$x Professional staff

410 2 \$a Harvard University \$x Staff, Professional

510 2 \$w g \$a Harvard University \$x Employees

670 \$a Work cat.: Noack, K.W. An assessment of the campus climate for gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender persons as perceived by the faculty, staff, and

## Appendix A

- administration at Texas A & M University, 2004: \$b abstr. (Texas A&M University; faculty, professional staff, and administration at the institution; professional staff members)
- 670 \$a Toutkoushian, R.K. Analysis of gender differences in salary increases for faculty and professional and administrative staff at the University of Minnesota, 1996.
- 670 \$a University of Arizona. Affirmative Action Office. Guidelines for recruitment, selection, and appointment of administrators, faculty, and professional staff members at the University of Arizona, 1985.
- 670 \$a Lai, E.T. Evaluation of retirement annuity plans available to University of Nevada System professional staff members by means of return on investment, 1972.
- 670 \$a East Texas State University. East Texas State University faculty and professional staff search handbook, 1990.
- 670 \$a Western Washington University. Exempt professional staff handbook, 1997.
- 670 \$a Wallace, S.N. Outcomes of decisional influences among professional staff at the State University of New York at Buffalo, 1996.
- 681 \$i Example under \$a Professional employees; Universities and colleges-- Professional staff

Note: Although the work being cataloged is about Texas A & M University and the subdivision **--Professional staff** is needed under that name heading, the subject heading proposed is **Harvard University--Professional staff** because Harvard University is the pattern heading for individual educational institutions. The establishment of the proposed heading makes the subdivision **--Professional staff** free-floating under any other appropriate individual educational institution.

The library also submits a proposal to make the subdivision **--Professional staff** free-floating under types of educational institutions, and to provide a general see reference for the use of the subdivision under individual educational institutions:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Universities and colleges \$x Professional staff
- 360 \$i subdivision \$a Professional staff \$i under names of individual institutions, e.g. \$a Harvard University--Professional staff
- 450 \$a College professional staff
- 450 \$a Professional staff members of universities and colleges
- 450 \$a Professional staff of universities and colleges
- 450 \$a Staff members of universities and colleges, Professional
- 450 \$a Staff of universities and colleges, Professional
- 450 \$a Universities and colleges \$x Staff, Professional
- 450 \$a University professional staff
- 550 \$w g \$a Universities and colleges \$x Employees



- 670 \$a Work cat.: Noack, K.W. An assessment of the campus climate for gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender persons as perceived by the faculty, staff, and administration at Texas A & M University, 2004: \$b abstr. (Texas A&M University as perceived by the faculty, professional staff, and administration at the institution; professional staff members)
- 670 \$a WaU database, Dec. 31, 2005 \$b (community college faculty and professional staff; faculty and other professional staff in higher education)
- 670 \$a OCLC, Dec. 31, 2005 \$b (administrative/professional and university staff employees; faculty and professional II staff at Oklahoma State University; East Texas State University faculty and professional staff; University of Nevada System professional staff members; Western Washington University exempt professional staff; University of the Virgin Islands full-time faculty and professional staff; administrators, faculty, and professional staff members at the University of Arizona; professional staff of Chicago State University; professional staff at the State University of New York at Buffalo; faculty and professional staff members of the State University of New York; professional staff members in the Connecticut community college system; professional staff at Hastings College)
- 670 \$a Simon Fraser University Administrative and Professional Staff Association home page, Dec. 31, 2005 \$b (SFU's administrative and professional staff)
- 670 \$a Penn Professional Staff Assembly home page, Dec. 31, 2005 \$b (administrative and technical staff who serve the teaching, research, and business missions of the University) about (All professional staff are welcome and encouraged to become an active member of PPSA)
- 681 \$i Example under \$a Professional employees

Additionally, a change proposal is made to add the general see reference shown below to the heading **Professional employees**:

- 360 \$i subdivision \$a Professional staff \$i under individual educational institutions and under types of educational institutions, e.g. \$a Harvard University--Professional staff; Universities and colleges--Professional staff

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a WIAbNL \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Henblas (Llangristiolus, Wales)

550 \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Wales

670 \$a Work cat.: Hughes, E.R. Henblas : a 17th & 18th century house, 2006.

670 \$a An atlas of Anglesey, 1972: \$b p. 75 (Henblas, Llangristiolus)

670 \$a Royal Commission on Ancient and Historical Monuments of Wales and Monmouthshire. An inventory of the ancient monuments in Anglesey, 1937: \$b p. 95 (Henblas, house, barn and outbuildings)

## Appendix A

Note: Since a heading for village of Llangristiolus was not yet established, a name authority record for it needed to be created at the same time this subject proposal was made.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a NNMM \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a H(circumflex)otel de Talleyrand (Paris, France)

410 2 \$a H(circumflex)otel de Rothschild (Paris, France)

410 2 \$a H(circumflex)otel de Saint-Florentin (Paris, France)

410 2 \$a Rothschild, H(circumflex)otel de (Paris, France)

410 2 \$a Saint-Florentin, H(circumflex)otel de (Paris, France)

410 2 \$a Talleyrand Building (Paris, France)

550 \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z France

550 \$w g \$a Embassy buildings \$z France

670 \$a Work cat.: Plans, coupes et (acute)el(acute)evations de l'h(circumflex)otel de Monseigneur le Comte de St Florentin Place de Louis XV, 1984.

670 \$a Embassy of the United States, Paris, France Web site, Feb. 9, 2006: \$b under "About the Embassy" (The Talleyrand Building: 1767-1769, H(circumflex)otel de Saint-Florentin; 1838-1950, H(circumflex)otel de Rothschild; 1985-today, H(circumflex)otel de Talleyrand. The building houses the American Embassy Consular Services, Public and Cultural Affairs offices, several other governmental agencies and the George C. Marshall Center.)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Padiham Power Station (Padiham, England)

550 \$w g \$a Coal-fired power plants \$z England

670 \$a Work cat.: Padiham Power Station, 1993: \$b t.p. (its role in 100 years of electricity generation in East Lancashire) p. 7 (the station was brought into regular use on 24 Jan. 1927) p. 19 (Padiham Power Station closed in 1993 and electricity generation by coal from power stations in East Lancashire came to an end)

670 \$a Mike Clarke WWW site, 8 Nov. 2006: \$b Electric Power Chronology page (the last delivery of coal to Padiham Power Station, 31 Mar. 1993; the station ceased generating in Sept. 1993)

952 \$a SCM H 405

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a CaAEUS \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Stabian Baths (Pompeii)

410 2 \$a Terme Stabiane (Pompeii)

410 2 \$a Thermae Stabianae (Pompeii)

551 \$w g \$a Italy \$x Antiquities

550 \$w g \$a Public baths \$z Italy

670 \$a Work cat.: Gilchrist, S. Pompeii. Stabian Baths (Terme Stabiane) : general view, c1998.

670 \$a Nappo, S.C. Pompeii : guide to the lost city, c1998: \$b p. 69 (The Stabian Baths ... occupy much of the southern sector of Insula VII-1.)

670 \$a Richardson, L. Pompeii : an architectural history, c1988: \$b p. 100 ("The Thermae Stabianae")

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a DGPO \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Wills House (Gettysburg, Pa.)

550 \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Pennsylvania

670 \$a Work cat.: U.S. Cong. House. Comm. on Resources. To expand the boundaries of the Gettysburg National Military Park to include the Wills House, report ... 2000: \$b p. 2 (H.R. 2435 would expand the boundaries of Gettysburg National Military Park to include the Wills House located within the borough of Gettysburg, Pa.; it was at the Wills House where President Lincoln penciled in the last revisions and stayed before his famous Gettysburg Address)

675 \$a Lippincott; \$a Nat. reg. hist. pl.

952 \$a LC pattern: Ansley Wilcox House (Buffalo, N.Y.)

*Appendix A*

130 (Uniform Title)

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a ATLA \$b eng \$c DLC

130 0 \$a Bhagavadg(macron)it(macron)a \$x Relation to the Bible

430 0 \$a Bible \$x Relation to the Bhagavadg(macron)it(macron)a

670 \$a Work cat.: Sampson, H.E. The Bhagavad-Gita interpreted in the light of Christian tradition, 1918.

952 \$a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC

130 0 \$a Bible \$x In motion pictures

450 \$a Biblical themes in motion pictures

670 \$a Work cat.: Sznajderman, M. Wsp(acute)o(/)czesna Biblia Pauperum, c1998.

670 \$a Star trek and sacred ground, c1999: \$b contents (Biblical imagery in Star trek; Biblical interpretation in the Star trek universe)

680 \$i Here are entered works on Biblical themes in motion pictures that are not themselves Bible films. Motion picture versions of Biblical stories are entered under \$a Bible films.

Note: Mirror image scope note must also be added to heading **Bible films**.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a UPB \$b eng \$c DLC

130 0 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Isaiah \$x Quotations in the Book of Mormon

430 0 \$a Book of Mormon \$x Quotations from Isaiah

530 0 \$a Book of Mormon \$x Relation to the Bible

670 \$a Work cat.: Commentaries on Isaiah in the Book of Mormon, c2003.

952 \$a LC pattern: Bible. O.T.--Quotations in the New Testament

The related term reference must also be established:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a UPB \$b eng \$c DLC

130 0 \$a Book of Mormon \$x Relation to the Bible

430 0 \$a Bible \$x Relation to the Book of Mormon

530 0 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Isaiah \$x Quotations in the Book of Mormon

670 \$a Work cat.: Testaments : links between the Book of Mormon and the Hebrew Bible, c2003.

952 \$a LC pattern: Koran--Relation to the Bible

## *Appendix A*

### 150 (Topical Term)

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Albert Memorial Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland)

450 \$a Albert Clock (Belfast, Northern Ireland)

450 \$a Albert Memorial Clock Tower (Belfast, Northern Ireland)

550 \$w g \$a Memorials \$z Northern Ireland

550 \$w g \$a Towers \$z Northern Ireland

670 \$a Work cat.: Gallagher, L. Albert Memorial Clock, 2003?

670 \$a Emporis buildings WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 \$b (Official name: Albert Memorial Clock. Type of construction: Clock tower)

670 \$a Inyourpocket essential city guides WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 \$b (Albert Memorial Clock. Belfast's most prominent timepiece was built from 1865-1870 in memory of Queen Victoria's husband, Prince Albert, who died in 1862. The 43m-high landmark is famous as Belfast's very own leaning tower)

670 \$a Wcities WWW site, Sept. 22, 2005 \$b (The Albert Memorial Clock Tower. Known locally as "The Albert Clock")

Backdoor headings created by LC staff:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Memorials \$z Northern Ireland

952 \$a Prompted by Uk

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Towers \$z Northern Ireland

952 \$a Prompted by Uk

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Animals \$x Longevity

360 \$i subdivision \$a Longevity \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Fishes--Longevity

450 \$a Animal longevity

550 \$w g \$a Animal life spans

550 \$w g \$a Longevity

670 \$a Work cat.: Evolution of longevity in animals, c1987.

- 670 \$a CA selects. Animal longevity & aging, Jan. 8, 1979.  
670 \$a Ford, B. Why does a turtle live longer than a dog? : a report on animal longevity, 1980.

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a CaAE \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Archer, Jenny (Fictitious character)  
450 \$a Jenny Archer (Fictitious character)  
670 \$a Work cat.: Conford, E. A job for Jenny Archer, c1988.  
670 \$a Conford, E. Can do, Jenny Archer, c1991 \$b (also by the same author: A case for Jenny Archer; Jenny Archer, author; What's cooking, Jenny Archer?; Jenny Archer to the rescue; Nibble, nibble, Jenny Archer; Get the picture, Jenny Archer)

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a AzTeS \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Bars (Drinking establishments) in literature  
670 \$a Work cat.: A Babel of bottles : drink, drinkers & drinking places in literature, 2000.  
952 \$a SCM H 362

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a CaBVa \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Box lacrosse  
450 \$a Boxla  
450 \$a Indoor lacrosse  
550 \$w g \$a Lacrosse  
670 \$a Work cat.: Canadian Lacrosse Assoc. Rules of box lacrosse, c1999.  
670 \$a Ency. of world sport, 1996: \$b p. 562 (Box lacrosse, also known as boxla or indoor lacrosse, which has gained professional status, is played in ice hockey rinks during the off-season when the floor is bare)  
670 \$a Oxford companion to sports & games, 1975: \$b p. 590 (Box lacrosse, a variation of lacrosse)  
670 \$a Wikipedia, Feb.16, 2006 \$b (Box lacrosse (sometimes shortened to Boxla) is an indoor version of lacrosse played almost solely in Canada, chiefly in British Columbia and southern Ontario. A national senior men's lacrosse championship (the Mann Cup) has been awarded in Canada since 1901, and is the most

*Appendix A*

prestigious lacrosse trophy in Canada. It has been played under box lacrosse rules since 1935)

675 \$a Berkshire ency. of world sport, c2005

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a MU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Cali Cartel

450 \$a Cartel de Cali

550 \$w g \$a Cocaine industry \$z Colombia

550 \$w g \$a Organized crime \$z Colombia

670 \$a Work cat: Jacque mate, 1999: \$b p. 9, etc. (Cartel de Cali; had the most relations of all Colombian cartels; has ties with the U.S., Sicilian, & Nigerian drug-trafficking orgs.)

670 \$a Cali Cartel : the new kings of cocaine, 1994.

670 \$a Altavista search, July 8, 2000: \$b U.S. Dept. of State Background notes, March 1998 (Despite the death of Medellin cartel drug lord Pablo Escobar in 1993 and the arrests of major Cali cartel kingpins in 1995 and 1996, the Colombian drug cartels remain among the most sophisticated criminal organizations in the world) Seattle Times newssource.com (Oct. 28, 1997, headline: Cali cartel's ex-attorneys not convicted)

675 \$a GNIS, July 6, 2000

952 \$a LC pattern: Medellin Cartel

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a DHMM \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Child concentration camp inmates

550 \$w g \$a Concentration camp inmates

670 \$a Work cat.: "Dann kam die deutsche Macht": Weissrussische Kinderh(umlaut)aflinge in deutschen Konzentrationslagern 1941-1945, c1999.

952 \$a LC pattern: Child slaves

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a UkOxU \$c DLC

150 \$a Christmas shopping

550 \$w g \$a Shopping

670 \$a Christmas shopping habits, 1997: \$b p. 1 ("to assess the significance of Christmas shopping to consumers and the importance of Christmas shopping



habits to retailers ... Christmas is the focal point for selling many types of products")  
 952 \$a LC pattern: Grocery shopping; Christmas cookery

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog  
 008/39 c  
 040 \$a NjP \$b eng \$c DLC  
 053 0 \$a BL820.C62  
 150 \$a Cleobis (Greek mythology)  
 550 \$w g \$a Mythology, Greek  
 670 \$a Cl(acute)eobis et Biton, 1995.  
 670 \$a Ox. classic. dict. \$b (Cleobis and Biton)  
 670 \$a Britannica Micro.: \$b v. 2, p. 244 (Biton and Cleobis; sons of Cydippe, priestess of Hera; noted for their filial devotion and athletic prowess)  
 670 \$a Collier's \$b (Cleobis and Biton)  
 670 \$a Grant, M. Gods and mortals in classic. myth., 1973 \$b (Cleobis and Biton)  
 670 \$a Oswalt, S.G. Concise encyc. of Greek and Roman myth, 1965 \$b (Cleobis and Biton)  
 952 \$a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Sept. 28, 1999

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog  
 008/39 c  
 040 \$a UkCU \$b eng \$c DLC  
 150 \$a Cockthrowing  
 450 \$a Cock-throwing  
 550 \$w g \$a Amusements  
 670 \$a Work cat.: Tucker, J. An earnest and affectionate address to the common people of England, concerning their usual recreations on Shrove Tuesday, 1780 \$b (running-title: On the barbarous custom of cock-throwing)  
 670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (cockthrowing: "an old sport of throwing sticks at a cock tied to a stake popular esp. at Shrovetide")  
 670 \$a OED \$b (cock-throwing: "the sport of throwing sticks at a cock tied to a post ... formerly an ordinary Shrove-tide pastime")  
 952 \$a LC pattern: Cockfighting

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog  
 008/39 c  
 040 \$a CoU-DA \$b eng \$c DLC  
 150 \$a Collision detection (Computer animation)  
 450 \$a Detection, Collision (Computer animation)

## Appendix A

- 550 \$w g \$a Computer animation  
670 \$a Work cat.: Jung, S. An adaptive collision detection and resolution for deformable objects using spherical implicit surface, 2005.  
670 \$a Microsoft computer dict.: \$b p. 108 (The process by which a game or simulation program determines whether two objects on the screen are touching each other.)  
670 \$a Wikipedia, Dec. 14, 2005 \$b (Collision detection: In physical simulations, video games and computational geometry, collision detection includes algorithms from checking for collision, i.e. intersection, of two given solids, to calculating trajectories, impact times and impact points in a physical simulation.)  
952 \$a LC pattern: Morphing (Computer animation)

-----

- 008/06 May Subd Geog  
008/39 c  
040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Coffee plantations  
450 \$a Coffee farms  
450 \$a Coffee tree farms  
550 \$w g \$a Plantations  
550 \$w g \$a Tree farms  
670 \$a Work cat.: Borkhataria, R.R. Ecological and political implications of conversion from shade to sun coffee in Puerto Rico, 2001: \$b abstr. (coffee plantations) p. 7 (coffee farms)  
670 \$a Delle, J.A. An archaeology of social space : analyzing coffee plantations in Jamaica's Blue Mountains, c1998.  
670 \$a WaU database, Dec. 16, 2005 \$b (coffee plantations; coffee farms)  
670 \$a Google search, Dec. 16, 2005 \$b (69,100 hits for "coffee farms"; 249,000 hits for "coffee plantations"; 5 hits for "coffee tree farms")

-----

- 008/06 May Subd Geog  
008/39 c  
040 \$a TxU \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Computer game music  
450 \$a Background music for computer games  
550 \$w g \$a Music  
670 \$a Work cat.: Broughton, B. Heart of darkness [SR] p1999 \$b (Heart of darkness bears the distinction of being the first orchestral score ever produced for a CD-ROM game)  
952 \$a LC pattern: Motion picture music

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a ABAU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Computer networks \$x Monitoring
- 450 \$a Monitoring of computer networks
- 450 \$a Network monitoring (Computer networks)
- 550 \$w g \$a Computer networks \$x Management
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Beigi, M. Low overhead continuous monitoring of IP network performance, 1998.
- 670 \$a Synapse Communications WWW site, Apr. 11, 2006 \$b Network security/System administration & security p. (Network monitoring -- The purpose of network monitoring is the collection of useful information from various parts of the network so that the network can be managed and controlled using the collected information)
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006 \$b (Network monitoring -- The term network monitoring describes the use of a system that constantly monitors a computer network for slow or failing systems and that notifies the network administrator in case of outages via email, pager or other alarms. It is a subset of the functions involved in network management)
- 670 \$a Encyclopedia of computer science, 2000: \$b p. 242 (Network management ... [I]t becomes increasingly important to be able to manage the network from a central location and collect network statistics for capacity planning ... Management software continues to evolve and uses ... standards to monitor the network, detect problems and take corrective action)
- 670 \$a ImageStream Internet Solutions, Inc. Network monitoring white paper, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006: \$b p. 2 (Network monitoring has been around as long as there have been networks. Most routers, switches, and intelligent hubs collect some level of network traffic statistics ... In short, network monitoring is the ability to collect and analyze network traffic)
- 675 \$a Dictionary of computer science, engineering, and technology, 2000; \$a Dictionary of computing, 1996; \$a World of computer science, 2002; \$a FOLDOC, via WWW, Apr. 11, 2006
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Electric machinery--Monitoring

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a MdU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 053 0 \$a TX803.R33
- 150 \$a Cookery (Radishes)
- 550 \$w g \$a Cookery (Vegetables)
- 550 \$a Radishes
- 670 \$a Kenk(macron)oshoku daikon, 1986.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Cookery (Potatoes)
- 952 \$a Classification proposal faxed to Coop Nov. 3, 1998

## Appendix A

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add **Cookery (Radishes)** as RT on the heading **Radishes**.

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a NjP \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Coptic chants

450 \$a Coptic Orthodox chants

550 \$w g \$a Chants

510 2 \$w g \$a Coptic Church \$x Liturgy

670 \$a Work cat.: Coptic Church. The Coptic Orthodox liturgy of St. Basil, 1998: \$b p. ix, etc. (music of the Coptic Orthodox Church consists of monophonic chant, sung in Coptic or Arabic; music quite distinct from that of Arabic, Armenian, Hebrew or Greek liturgical traditions)

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a NjP \$b eng \$c DLC

110 2 \$a Coptic Church \$x Liturgy

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a CaAE \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Danny (Fictitious character : Hoff)

670 \$a Work cat.: Hoff, S. Happy birthday, Danny and the dinosaur!, c1995 \$b (also appears in Danny and the dinosaur, c1958; Danny and the dinosaur go to camp, c1996)

952 \$a SCM H 1610

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a CSt \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Exploitation films

550 \$w g \$a Motion pictures

550 \$a Sensationalism in motion pictures

670 \$a Work cat.: Narcotic, c1999.

670 \$a Moving image genre-form guide \$b (Exploitation: Fictional or loosely

- nonfictional work which offered subject matter that was taboo in mainstream cinema. Such work was frequently presented under the guise of preachy expos(acute)es, sex education, morality plays, and pseudo-documentaries. Standard topics included the dangers of premarital sex, the vice racket, nudist cults, or the dangers of narcotics. The work was made to exploit a subject for quick profit, and usually produced on a low budget by a small company. By pandering to an audience's curiosity or prurient interest, such work is on the borderline of censorship restrictions and recognizable for its emphasis on sensational aspects with little interest in artistic or social merit. Related terms, Erotic, Pornography)
- 670 \$a Halliwell's filmgoer's & videoviewer's companion, c1995 \$b (Exploitation film: a term used to describe low-budget movies of a sensational kind that either focus on some headline-making social phenomenon or attempt to cash in on a current box-office success. Sex, horror and fantasy are the predominant subject matters)
- 670 \$a Moving image materials : genre terms, 1988 \$b (Exploitation works, use Erotica)
- 680 \$i Here are entered motion pictures of a sensational nature, usually offering subject matter taboo in mainstream cinema, usually produced on a low budget and often presented in the guise of preachy expos(acute)es or pseudo-documentaries.

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add **Exploitation films** as RT on the existing heading **Sensationalism in motion pictures**.

-----

- 008/06 Not Subd Geog  
008/39 c  
040 \$a NcD \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Fan fiction  
450 \$a Fan fic  
450 \$a Fanfic  
550 \$w g \$a Fiction  
670 \$a Work cat.: The democratic genre, 2005: \$b t.p. (Fan fiction) p. 7 (fan fiction (aka fanfic); Fan fiction is published both online and in fanzines) p. 9 (fiction based on a situation and characters originally created by someone else)  
670 \$a Oxford English dict. online, Apr. 4, 2006 \$b (fan fiction: fiction, usually fantasy or science fiction, written by a fan rather than a professional author, esp. that based on already-existing characters from a television series, book, film, etc.; (also) a piece of such writing; also fanfic or fan fic)  
675 \$a Web. 3  
680 \$i Here are entered collections of fiction written by fans of specific authors, books, films, television series, etc., and incorporating the characters and/or settings of those authors or works.

## *Appendix A*

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a DHMM \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Fascist aesthetics

550 \$w g \$a Aesthetics

670 \$a Work cat.: Donahue-Bombosch, T. Building the nation : fascist mass spectacle as worker culture, 1997: \$b p. iv ("fascist aesthetic")

952 \$a LC pattern: Communist aesthetics

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a VaVbRU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Fathers on television

550 \$w g \$a Television

670 \$a Work cat.: Murphy, T. Return of the king : a call for redemption of the sitcom father, 2005.

670 \$a Pehlke, T.A. Dimensions of the father role : an inductive thematic analysis of television sitcoms, 2005.

670 \$a Fane, X.F. Television image of the father, 1965.

952 \$a LC pattern: Mothers on television

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a IeDuTC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Gob(acute)a Saor (Legendary character)

450 \$a Gobhaun Saor (Legendary character)

550 \$w g \$a Folklore \$z Ireland

670 \$a Work cat.: O'Loughlin, L. The Gobán Saor, 1997.

670 \$a Myth, legend & romance : an encyclopedia of the Irish folk tradition, 1990: \$b p. 241 (Gob(acute)an Saor famous craftsman of Irish legend, concerning whom a number of anecdotes were told throughout the country. The name seems to be a hypocoristic form of Goibhniu, the ancient god of smithcraft, while the subriquet Saor means artificer)

670 \$a LC database, Apr. 16, 1998 \$b (in notes: Gob(acute)an Saor; Gobhaun Saor)

675 \$a Britannica; \$a Ireland, 1983

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a NdMinS \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.)

- 450 \$a Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower (Rugby, N.D.)  
550 \$w g \$a Bell towers \$z North Dakota  
670 \$a Work cat.: Niewoehner, D.G. Dakota Bells : a narrative of the Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower, 2000.  
670 \$a Phone call to Niewoehner Funeral Home, May 11, 2001 \$b (Henry A. Niewoehner Memorial Bell Tower; located in Rugby, N.D.)  
670 \$a Rugby North Dakota website, May 11, 2001 \$b (Bell Tower in Rugby; 30 ft. tower containing 15 bells; tower dedicated in 1999 in memory of Henry A. Niewoehner; tower atop the Niewoehner Funeral Home)

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Honey-Bear Farm (Imaginary place)  
550 \$w g \$a Imaginary places  
670 \$a Work cat: Parry, A. Blossom's prize, 1998: \$b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)  
670 \$a Parry, A. The picnic, 1998: \$b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)  
670 \$a Parry, A. Bramble forgets, 1998: \$b t.p. (Honey-Bear Farm)  
675 \$a Altavista WWW search, 27 Sept. 2000

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a TxLT \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Hurricane Bonnie, 1998  
450 \$a Bonnie, Hurricane, 1998  
550 \$w g \$a Hurricanes  
670 \$a Work cat.: Schroeder, J.L. Hurricane Bonnie wind flow characteristics, 1999: \$b leaf 50 (Hurricane Bonnie made landfall near Cape Fear, NC, at 5:00 p.m. EDT on 26 August, 1998)  
670 \$a National Hurricane Center web site, July 13, 2000 \$b (preliminary report, Hurricane Bonnie, 19-30 August, 1998)  
952 \$a LC pattern: Hurricane Floyd, 1999

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a AuSU \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Indigenous peoples \$x Urban residence  
450 \$a Urban residence of indigenous peoples  
550 \$w g \$a Urbanization  
670 \$a Work cat.: Urban life, urban culture : Aboriginal/indigenous experiences,

*Appendix A*

1998.

952 \$a LC pattern: Indians of Central America--Urban residence

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a CoLwJCPL \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Internet pornography

450 \$a Cyberporn

450 \$a Online pornography

550 \$w g \$a Pornography

670 \$a Work cat.: Burt, D. Dangerous access, 2000: \$b t.p. (Internet pornography)

670 \$a U.S. Cong. Comm. on the Judiciary. Cyberporn and children, 1996.

670 \$a Alta Vista search, Aug. 15, 2000 \$b (Cyberporn; Online pornography; Porn on the Internet; Pornography on the Internet; Pornography online)

952 \$a LC pattern: Internet gambling

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a DNAL \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Irradiated strawberries

550 \$w g \$a Irradiated fruit

550 \$w g \$a Strawberries

670 \$a Work cat.: Marcotte, M. Irradiated strawberries sell well in the first North American market launch, 1992.

670 \$a LC pattern: Irradiated shrimp

Since the first BT on the heading above is not yet established, it also has to be proposed:

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a DNAL \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Irradiated fruit

550 \$w g \$a Fruit

550 \$w g \$a Irradiated foods

670 \$a Work cat.: Marcotte, M. Irradiated strawberries sell well in the first North American market launch, 1992.

952 \$a LC pattern: Irradiated seafood



008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNYU-HJ \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Jews \$z Spain \$x History \$y Expulsion, 1492
- 450 \$a Spain \$x History \$y Expulsion of the Jews, 1492
- 450 \$a Gerush Sefarad, Spain, 1492
- 450 \$a Expulsion of the Jews, Spain, 1492
- 450 \$a Gerush ha-Yehudim mi-Sefarad, Spain, 1492
- 550 \$w g \$a Jews \$x Persecutions \$z Spain
- 550 \$w g \$a Jews \$z Spain \$x Migrations
- 551 \$w g \$a Spain \$x Emigration and immigration
- 551 \$w g \$a Spain \$x History \$y Ferdinand and Isabella, 1479-1516
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Beinhard, H. Gerush Sefarad, c1994: \$b added t.p. (The Expulsion of the Jews from Spain) map on lining paper (Gerush ha-Yehudim mi-Sefarad)
- 670 \$a Encyc. Judaica: \$b vol. 28, col. 240, etc. (On March 31, 1492 edict of expulsion of the Jews from Spain was signed in Granada; Jews willing to accept Christianity were allowed to stay)
- 670 \$a Britannica, 1992: \$b vol. 28, p. 38 (in 1492 the first Inquisitor General, Thomas de Torquemada, himself from a Converso family, persuaded the Catholic kings to expell all Jews who refused to be baptized; Queen Isabella and most of her contemporaries looked at the expulsion of about 170,000 of her subjects as a pious duty)
- 670 \$a Jewish history sourcebook, WWW site, July 25, 2000 \$b (Jews expelled from Spain by Ferdinand and Isabella in Spring, 1492)

Backdoor headings created by LC staff: **Jews--Persecutions--Spain; Jews--Spain--History; Jews--Spain; Jews--Spain--Migrations; Spain--Emigration and immigration**

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a IEN \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Kwatay language
- 450 \$a Kuuwaataay language
- 450 \$a Kwaatay language
- 550 \$w g \$a Atlantic languages
- 551 \$w g \$a Senegal \$x Languages
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Une grammaire pratique avec phonologie et dictionnaire de kwatay, 1992.
- 670 \$a Ethnologue, via WWW, Aug. 25, 1999 \$b (Kwatay (Kuuwaataay))
- 670 \$a Voegelin lang.: \$b p. 29 (Kwaatay)
- 670 \$a Fivaz, D. African lang., 1977: \$b p. 172 (Kwaatay; Diola subgroup)
- 670 \$a Niger-Congo languages Website, Nov. 23, 1999 \$b (Kwatay)

## Appendix A

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a ICLAM \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Latex garments
- 450 \$a Latex clothing
- 450 \$a Latex-wear
- 450 \$a Latexwear
- 550 \$w g \$a Clothing and dress
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Thibault, K.J. Leather and latex care : how to keep your leather and latex looking great, c1996.
- 670 \$a The Baroness presents The rubber room & latex lounge, via WWW, May 23, 2000 \$b (elegant, provocative latex fashions; latex clothing)
- 670 \$a Eye Candy International WWW home page, May 23, 2000 \$b (online latex and fetish clothing store)
- 670 \$a House of Whacks WWW home page, May 23, 2000: \$b order information (latex clothing; latex clothes; garments)
- 670 \$a Yahoo!, May 23, 2000 \$b (category: Home > Business and Economy > Shopping and Services > Sex > Apparel > Latex and Leather; rubber & latex clothing; rubber, latex and lycra clothing; latex-wear; latex fetish and fashion clothing; PVC and latex clothing; latex clothing; latex, rubber, and PVC apparel)
- 670 \$a Alltheweb search, June 12, 2000 \$b (titles: latexwear)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Leather garments

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a OCl \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Lutherans, Latvian
- 450 \$a Latvian Lutherans
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Vi(left hook)n(hacek)s nec(macron)in(macron)ij(macron)as pasau(macron)igi ... 1997.
- 680 \$i Here are entered works on Latvian Lutherans living outside their native country who use their native language in church services.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Lutherans, Norwegian

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Memorial Chamber (Peace Tower, Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
- 510 2 \$w g \$a Peace Tower (Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Rooms \$z Ontario
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower, Houses of Parliament, between 1930 and 1940: \$b t.p. (Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower; part of

- the Parliament Buildings complex, Ottawa, Ontario) p. 4 (The chamber in the Peace Tower of the Houses of Parliament has been set apart as a memorial of the service and sacrifice of Canada in the Great War.)
- 670 \$a Architecture of the Canadian Parliament, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada homepage, July 17, 2003 \$b (The Parliament complex is divided into the Centre Block, the East Block, the West Block and the Peace Tower. The Peace Tower contains the Memorial Chamber which opened in 1928.)

Since the qualifier in the heading (which is also a broader term reference) is not yet established, it has to be proposed at the same time:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 110 2 \$a Peace Tower (Parliament Buildings, Ottawa, Ont.)
- 510 2 \$w g \$a Parliament Buildings (Ottawa, Ont.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Public buildings \$z Ontario
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Memorial Chamber in the Peace Tower, Houses of Parliament, between 1930 and 1940: \$b t.p. (Peace Tower; part of the Parliament Buildings complex, Ottawa, Ontario)
- 670 \$a Architecture of the Canadian Parliament, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada homepage, July 17, 2003 \$b (The Parliament complex is divided into the Centre Block, the East Block, the West Block and the Peace Tower. The Peace Tower contains the Memorial Chamber which opened in 1928.)

Since the heading **Parliament Buildings (Ottawa, Ont.)** was already established, a proposal for it was not needed.

Backdoor heading also submitted (optional; LC will create if not submitted):

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Rooms \$z Ontario
- 952 \$a Made for reference hierarchy

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 053 0 \$a SF293.N67
- 150 \$a North Swedish horse
- 450 \$a Nordsvensk horse
- 450 \$a North Swedish draft horse
- 450 \$a North Swedish draught horse

## Appendix A

- 450 \$a NSV (Horse breed)  
550 \$w g \$a Draft horses  
550 \$w g \$a Horse breeds  
670 \$a Work cat.: Tj(uumlaut)alld(acute)en, U. Breeding of the North Swedish horse, 2003: \$b p. 5 (the NSV; NSV horse) p. 6 (den nordsvenska h(uumlaut)asten) p. 10 (the North Swedish Draught Horse (the NSV))  
670 \$a EAAP-Animal Genetic Data Bank Web site, Jan. 2, 2007 \$b (International breed name: North Swedish Horse. Local breed name: Nordsvensk H(uumlaut)ast. Group of similar breeds: Main group Heavy-horses; Subgroup Nordic heavy horses)  
670 \$a Breeds of livestock Web site, Jan. 2, 2007: \$b horses (North Swedish Horse. Originating from Sweden, the North Swedish Horse is a heavy draft and farm workhorse. It is of the same origin as the Dole horse of Norway, which descended from the ancient Scandinavian native horse.)  
670 \$a F(uumlaut)oreningen Nordsvenska H(uumlaut)asten English Web site, Jan. 2, 2007 \$b (Along with the Gotland Pony, the North Swedish is Sweden's only native breed of horse; North Swedish horse)  
952 \$a LC pattern: Clydesdale horse  
952 \$a Classification proposal entered in Class. Web on Jan. 2, 2007

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a DNA \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Operation Darby Talon, 1970  
450 \$a Darby Talon, Operation, 1970  
550 \$w g \$a Vietnam War, 1961-1975 \$x Campaigns  
670 \$a Work cat.: Combat after action report, Operation Darby Talon, Apr. 27, 1970 \$b (carried out from March 12, 1970 to April 21, 1970, by the 173rd Airborne Division in the Tuy Hoa District, Phu Yen Province; mission was to secure the GVN pacification programs and provide accelerated training and assistance to Territorial Force)  
670 \$a Virtual Vietnam Archives operations search, Oct. 18, 2005 \$b (Operation Darby Talon; carried out from March 12 to April 21, 1970, by the 3rd Battalion, 503rd Infantry of the 173d Airborne Infantry (USA); mission in the Phu Yen Province)  
952 \$a LC pattern: Operation Atlanta, 1967

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a UkOxU \$b eng \$c DLC  
053 0 \$a GN480.35 \$c Anthropology  
053 0 \$a HQ997.5 \$c Sociology

- 150 \$a Polygyny
- 550 \$w g \$a Polygamy
- 550 \$a Harems
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Bretschneider, P. Polygyny, 1995.
- 670 \$a Gould, E.D. The mystery of monogamy, 2004: \$b p. 3 (rich men throughout history have tended to practise polygyny (multiple wives))
- 670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (Polygyny. A marriage form in which a man has two or more wives at the same time - contrasted with polyandry)
- 670 \$a OED online, Feb. 14, 2005 \$b (Polygyny. That form of polygamy in which one man has several wives at the same time; plurality of wives (or concubines). Corresp. to polyandry)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Polyandry

Note: Change proposal must also be made to add **Polygyny** as RT on the heading **Harems**. A classification proposal to establish the number HQ997.5 is also submitted.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a TxFACM \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Porta Nigra (Trier, Germany)
- 450 \$a Black Gate (Trier, Germany)
- 550 \$w g \$a Gates \$z Germany
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Die Porta Nigra in Trier, c1984.
- 670 \$a Encyc. Brit., 15th ed.: \$b under Trier (Porta Nigra; 4th cent. fortified town gate; converted for other uses in Middle Ages; since restored)
- 670 \$a National geographic traveler, May/June 1995: \$b Rhine journey, p. 53 (Porta Nigra, or Black Gate)

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a MMiltC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Racial profiling in law enforcement
- 450 \$a Profiling, Racial, in law enforcement
- 550 \$w g \$a Law enforcement
- 670 \$a Work cat.: America in black and white. Racial profiling and law enforcement [VR], 2000.
- 670 \$a U.S. G.A.O. Racial profiling : limited data available on motorist stops, 2000.
- 670 \$a Cleary, J. Racial profiling studies in law enforcement, 2000.
- 670 \$a ACLU Web site, 2 Oct. 2000: \$b Racial profiling in America (also called DWB, D.W.B., "Driving while black or brown")
- 670 \$a Advisory Board to the President's Initiative on Race Web site, 2 Oct. 2000 \$b (Racial profiling by law-enforcement officials can be used in determining whether

## Appendix A

a suspect can be questioned, but can lead to discrimination.)

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a ViU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a School integration \$x Massive resistance movement

450 \$a Massive resistance movement against school integration

450 \$a School integration \$x Massive resistance movement \$z Southern States

450 \$a School integration \$x Massive resistance movement \$z United States

550 \$w g \$a Government, Resistance to \$z Southern States \$x History \$y 20th century

670 \$a Work cat.: The moderates' dilemma : massive resistance to school desegregation in Virginia, 1998: \$b p. 1 ("...'massive resistance' to the federal courts, embodied in the 1956 Southern Manifesto ... massive resistance, interposition, and school-closing laws came to dominate the white response to Brown [v. Board of Education]) p. 43 (Feb. 1956, Va. senator Harry Byrd, Sr. first used phrase "massive resistance," organizing Southern States for massive resistance to U.S. Supreme Court-ordered school desegregation) p. 20 ("... the massive resistance path adopted by Virginia's political leaders between 1956 and 1959")

670 \$a Civil rights in the United States, 2000 \$b (massive resistance: on February 24, 1956, U.S. Senator Harr F. Byrd of Virginia called for "massive resistance" to the Supreme Court's school desegregation order in Brown case; over the next several months, Southern states legislatures passed laws aiming at preventing public school desegregation; in Arkansas, Governor Faubus shut down all public schools in Little Rock in 1958-59; massive resistance quietly ended in early 1960s, though in Prince Edward County, Virginia, public schools remained closed until 1964)

670 \$a Massive resistance : southern opposition to the second Reconstruction, 2005.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a UkLCIA \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Scottish Colourists (Group of artists)

450 \$a Scottish Colorists (Group of artists)

550 \$w g \$a Painting, Scottish

670 \$a Work cat.: The Scottish Colourists, 1900-1930 : F.C.B. Cadell, J.D. Fergusson, G.L. Hunter, S.J. Peploe, 2000.

670 \$a The dict. of art, 1996: \$b v. 28, p. 239 (The name was applied posthumously to S.J. Peploe, Leslie Hunter (1877-1931) and F.C.B. Cadell (1883-1937) by T.J. Honeyman in his study of 1950; later it was extended to include the work of J.D. Fergusson)

670 \$a The Scottish colourists : F.C.B. Cadell (1883-1937), J.D. Fergusson (1874-1961), Leslie Hunter (1879-1931), S.J. Peploe (1871-1935) : Guildford House

- Gallery, 1-29 March 1980, City Museum & Art Gallery, 12 April-10 May 1980,  
Ferens Art Gallery, 17 May-15 June 1980, 1980.
- 670 \$a Billcliffe, R. The Scottish colourists : Cadell, Fergusson, Hunter, Peplow, 1989.  
952 \$a LC pattern: Shoreham Circle (Group of artists)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a RPB-M \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Shakuhachi and electronic music  
450 \$a Electronic and shakuhachi music  
670 \$a Work cat.: The International Computer Music Association commission awards,  
1994-96 [SR], p 1997: \$b insert (Birdwing; for shakuhachi and tape)

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a SG-SiILA \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Short stories, Singapore (Chinese)  
450 \$a Short stories, Chinese \$z Singapore  
450 \$a Singapore short stories (Chinese)  
550 \$w g \$a Singapore fiction (Chinese)  
670 \$a Work cat.: Kua shi ji wei xing xiao shuo xuan, 2003.  
952 \$a LC pattern: Short stories, Singapore (English)

Since the broader term is not yet established, it must be submitted as a separate proposal:

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a SG-SiILA \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Singapore fiction (Chinese)  
450 \$a Chinese fiction \$z Singapore  
550 \$w g \$a Singapore literature (Chinese)  
670 \$a Work cat.: Xinjiapo dang dai Hua wen wen xue da xi. Xiao shuo ji, 1991.  
952 \$a LC pattern: Singapore fiction (English)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a TxCM \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999  
450 \$a Aggie Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999  
450 \$a Aggie Bonfire Tragedy, College Station, Tex., 1999

## Appendix A

- 450 \$a Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
- 450 \$a Texas Aggie Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
- 450 \$a Texas Bonfire Collapse, College Station, Tex., 1999
- 550 \$w g \$a Bonfires \$x Accidents \$z Texas
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Tang, I. The Texas Aggie Bonfire : tradition and tragedy at Texas A&M, 2000.
- 670 \$a Google search of WWW, Apr. 27, 2000 \$b (Aggie Bonfire Collapse, Aggie Bonfire Tragedy, Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse, Bonfire Collapse)
- 670 \$a Texas Monthly Web site, Apr. 28, 2000 \$b (Aggie Bonfire Tragedy)
- 670 \$a ABCnews Web site, Apr. 28, 2000 \$b (Texas Bonfire Collapse)
- 670 \$a CNN Web site, Apr. 28, 2000 \$b (Texas A&M Bonfire Collapse)
- 675 \$a Britannica online; \$a Texas almanac, 2000/2001

Because a heading for **Bonfires** does not yet exist and this term is used as the main heading of the BT, it must also be established, with authority research to justify the choice of heading:

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Bonfires

550 \$w g \$a Fires

670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (bonfire: a great open-air fire to mark a religious anniversary or some public event, as a political rally, a community outing, a victory celebration, the birthday of a famous person)

Two backdoor headings are also created as a result of the first proposal:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Bonfires \$x Accidents \$z Texas

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Bonfires \$x Accidents

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a ViU \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Tunnels \$x Law and legislation

550 \$w g \$a Highway law

670 \$a Work cat.: Rules and regulations covering the use of the Big Walker Mountain



and East River tunnels, Interstate Route 77, 1970.

Note: SCM H 1154.5 instructs catalogers to "establish editorially new uses of the subdivision **--Law and legislation.**" The exception, discussed in SCM H 1705, is when the subdivision has been established under a pattern heading, for example, **Cancer--Law and legislation.** In those cases, the subdivision is free-floating under headings governed by that pattern.

-----

008/06 Not Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Ukko (Finnish deity)

450 \$a Ukko-Ylijumala (Finnish deity)

450 \$a Ylijumala (Finnish deity)

550 \$w g \$a Gods, Finnish

670 \$a Work cat.: Salo, U. Ukko, 2006: \$b t.p. (Ukko, the God of thunder of the ancient Finns and his Indo-European family)

670 \$a Godchecker.com WWW site, 13 April 2006: \$b Ukko (Once the top God of Finland, he specialises in storms and lightning - also known as Ylijumala, Ukko-Ylijumala)

952 \$a LC pattern: Thor (Norse deity)

Because the BT **Gods, Finnish** does not yet exist, it must be established through a separate proposal:

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Gods, Finnish

450 \$a Finnish gods

670 \$a Work cat.: Salo, U. Ukko, 2006: \$b t.p. (Ukko, the God of thunder of the ancient Finns and his Indo-European family)

670 \$a Godchecker.com WWW site, 13 April 2006 \$b (Complete list of Finnish Gods)

952 \$a LC pattern: Gods, Norse

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

040 \$a InIU-L \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a United Nations Decade for Human Rights Education, 1995-2004

450 \$a Decade for Human Rights Education, United Nations, 1995-2004

550 \$w g \$a Special decades

## *Appendix A*

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Human rights education, 1998: \$b p. 1 (United Nations Decade for Human Rights Education (1995-2004))
- 952 \$a LC pattern: United Nations Decade for the Eradication of Poverty, 1997-2006

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Venetian Room (972 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y.)
- 510 2 \$w g \$a 972 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Reception rooms \$z New York (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Stanford White's Venetian Room, 1998: \$b t.p. (Venetian Room) p. 1 (created as the reception room in the townhouse at 972 Fifth Avenue [by Stanford White, 1853-1906] now the French Consulate)
- 670 \$a Phone call to Mr. Vigne, Director of Visual Arts, Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy, June 7, 2000 \$b (Venetian Room is in the building belonging to the French Consulate; the building is also known as Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy and 972 Fifth Avenue)
- 675 \$a Avery index online, April 2, 2000; \$a Grove dict. art online, April 2, 2000; \$a Lowe. Stanford White's New York, 1999; \$a Wodehouse. White of McKim, Mead and White, 1988

Headings created for reference hierarchy:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 110 2 \$a 972 Fifth Avenue (New York, N.Y.)
- 410 2 \$a Payne Whitney House (New York, N.Y.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Public buildings \$z New York (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Stanford White's Venetian Room, 1998: \$b p. 1 (townhouse at 972 Fifth Avenue now the French Consulate)
- 670 \$a Phone call to Mr. Vigne, Director of Visual Arts, Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy, June 7, 2000 \$b (French Consulate; the building is also known as Offices of the Cultural Services of the French Embassy or Cultural Services of the French Embassy and 972 Fifth Avenue; formerly Payne Whitney House)
- 670 \$a AIA guide to New York City, c1988: \$b p. 375 (Cultural Services, Embassy of France, formerly Payne Whitney residence)
- 670 \$a A guide to New York City landmarks, c1979: \$b p. 33 (French Embassy, Cultural, Press and Informational Services, originally Payne Whitney House; erected from plans of 1902 by William Kendall of the firm McKim, Mead & White; completed 1906 for Whitney; Republic of France acquired building in 1952)
- 675 \$a Avery index online, April 2, 2000; \$a Grove dict. art online, April 2, 2000; \$a

- Lowe. Stanford White's New York, 1999; \$a Wodehouse. White of McKim, Mead and White, 1988
- 952 \$a SCM H 1334
- 952 \$a Not the same as the French Consulate building located at 934 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y.
- 008/06 May Subd Geog
- 008/39 c
- 040 \$a NNC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Reception rooms
- 550 \$w g \$a Rooms
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Stanford White's Venetian Room, 1998: \$b p. 1 (reception room in the townhouse at 972 Fifth Avenue [by Stanford White, 1853-1906])
- 670 \$a Web. 3.
- 670 \$a LC database, June 22, 2000.
- 670 \$a AAT online, April 3, 2000 \$b (reception rooms)
- 670 \$a Grove dict. art online, April 3, 2000: \$b under USA, Interior decoration, after 1900 (reception rooms)
- 670 \$a LC pattern: Dining rooms

Backdoor heading created by LC:

- 150 \$a Reception rooms \$z New York (State)

-----

- 008/06 May Subd Geog
- 008/39 c
- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Wetland restoration
- 450 \$a Restoration of wetlands
- 450 \$a Wetlands \$x Restoration
- 450 \$a Wetlands restoration
- 550 \$w g \$a Restoration ecology
- 550 \$w g \$a Wetland management
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Hey, D.L. A case for wetland restoration, c1999.
- 670 \$a LC database, July 26, 1999 \$b (titles: Wetland restoration and enhancement in California; Wetland creation and restoration; Wetland restoration, flood pulsing, and disturbance dynamics; Potential sites for wetland restoration, enhancement, and creation; Proceedings of the ... annual Conference on Wetlands Restoration and Creation; Restoration of temperate wetlands)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Watershed restoration

Additional heading required for reference hierarchy:

*Appendix A*

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Wetland management
- 450 \$a Wetlands \$x Management
- 450 \$a Wetlands management
- 550 \$w g \$a Ecosystem management
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Watershed management

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a OkS \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Yellow in interior decoration
- 550 \$w g \$a Interior decoration
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Interiors in yellow, c1998.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Blue in interior decoration

-----

008/06 May Subd Geog

008/39 c

- 040 \$a ABAU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Zeolite catalysts
- 550 \$w g \$a Catalysts
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Lotus, A.F. Study of an oxidation catalyst system for treating diesel exhaust from mobile sources, 2004: \$b abstr. (This investigation attempts to develop and test a catalyst (copper ion-exchanged ZSM-5 zeolite) system for its ability to effectively treat diesel exhaust gas. During the first phase of this investigation, catalyst/zeolites were used)
- 670 \$a McGraw-Hill dictionary of scientific and technical terms, 2003 \$b (zeolite catalyst -- [inorganic chemistry] -- Hydrated aluminum and calcium (or sodium) silicates ... made with controlled porosity; used as catalytic cracking catalyst in petroleum refineries, or loaded with catalyst for other chemical reactions)
- 670 \$a Academic Press dictionary of science and technology, 1992 \$b (zeolite catalyst -- chemical engineering -- a porous material, natural or synthetic, consisting of hydrated silicates of aluminum and sodium or calcium; used as a catalyst in petroleum cracking)
- 670 \$a Encyclopedia of physical science and technology, 2002: \$b v. 9, p. 759 (Zeolites are applied as ... catalysts for a variety of chemical processes)
- 670 \$a Kumar, N. Zeolites and mesoporous molecular sieves, via WWW, Jan. 16, 2007 \$b (Besides the petrochemical industry, zeolites are potential catalysts for synthesis of fine chemicals and for the removal of emissions from motor vehicles and stationary sources)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Montmorillonite catalysts

151 (Geographic Name)

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a MdU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Alexanderplatz (Berlin, Germany)
- 451 \$a Alex (Berlin, Germany : Plaza)
- 550 \$w g \$a Plazas \$z Germany
- 667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Alexanderplatz, städtebaulicher Ideen Wettbewerb, 1994: \$b p. 8 (called "Alex" by Berliners)
- 670 \$a Britannica Macro.: \$b map of Berlin (Alexanderplatz)
- 670 \$a Fodor's Germany, 1995: \$b p. 503, etc. (Alexanderplatz; named after Czar Alexander I)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a IeDuTC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Belfast (Northern Ireland) \$x History \$y Bombardment, 1941
- 450 \$a Belfast Blitz, Belfast, Northern Ireland, 1941
- 550 \$w g \$a Bombing, Aerial \$z Northern Ireland
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Belfast is burning 1941 : the story of the assistance given by the emergency services from Eire following the German bombing of Belfast, 2002.
- 670 \$a Enc. of Ireland, 2003 \$b (Belfast blitz (1941) ... 7/8 Apr., 15 Apr. (900 killed), 4/5 May)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Dresden (Germany)--History--Bombardment, 1945

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Bruneau River Watershed (Nev. and Idaho)
- 550 \$w g \$a Watersheds \$z Idaho
- 550 \$w g \$a Watersheds \$z Nevada
- 670 Work cat.: Varricchione, J.T. Annual monitoring report, 1997 : Bruneau hot-spring springsnail (*Pyrgulopsis bruneauensis*), 1998: \$b p. 62 (Bruneau River drainage)
- 781 0 \$z Bruneau River Watershed (Nev. and Idaho)

Headings for watersheds are established by adding the term **Watershed** to the heading for the name of the river or lake (see SCM H 800 sec. 9). If the river or lake is not yet established, it must also be established at the same time. Since Bruneau River has not yet been established, an additional SACO proposal is necessary:

## Appendix A

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)
- 451 \$a Bruneau Creek (Nev. and Idaho)
- 451 \$a Bruneau River, West Fork (Nev. and Idaho)
- 451 \$a Brunneau Creek (Nev. and Idaho)
- 451 \$a West Fork, Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)
- 550 \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Idaho
- 550 \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Nevada
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Varricchione, J.T. Annual monitoring report, 1997 : Bruneau hot-spring springsnail (*Pyrgulopsis bruneauensis*), 1998: \$b p. 3 (Bruneau River)
- 670 \$a GNIS, Dec. 18, 2000 \$b (Bruneau River, stream, Owyhee Co., Idaho and Elko Co., Nev.; variant names: Bruneau Creek, Brunneau Creek, West Fork Bruneau River)
- 670 \$a Columbia gaz., c1998 \$b (Bruneau River, NE Nev. and SW Idaho; rises in E Elko co., Nev., 35 mi/56 km NW of Wells; flows generally N through Humboldt Natl. Forest, into Owyhee co., Idaho; receives Jarbidge R., from SSE, and Clover Creek (East Fork), then NNW past Bruneau to Snake R. (C.J. Strike Reservoir) 16 mi/26 km SW of Mountain Home)
- 781 0 \$z Bruneau River (Nev. and Idaho)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Callisto (Satellite) \$x Geology
- 550 \$w g \$a Astrogeology
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Geological Survey (U.S.). Geologic map of Callisto, 1997.
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Mars (Planet)--Geology

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a IeDuTC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Carlingford Lough (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
- 451 \$a Cairlinn, Loch (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
- 451 \$a Loch Cairlinn (Northern Ireland and Ireland)
- 550 \$w g \$a Inlets \$z Ireland
- 550 \$w g \$a Inlets \$z Northern Island
- 670 \$a Work cat.: McStay, M. Carlingford Lough, 2004.
- 670 \$a Col. gaz., 1998 \$b (Carlingford Lough, Gael. Loch Cairlinn, inlet of Irish Sea bet. Down Co., Northern Ireland, and Louth Co., Ireland)

781 0 \$z Carlingford Lough (Northern Ireland and Ireland)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a CaOONL \$b eng \$c DLC

151 \$a Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve (B.C.)

550 \$w g \$a Ecological reserves \$z British Columbia

670 \$a Work cat.: BC Parks. Lower Mainland District. Chilliwack Lake Provincial Park & Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve management plan, 2000: \$b CIP (Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve)

670 \$a British Columbia Ecological Reserves WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000 \$b (Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve, "Mature alluvial forest with large western red cedars; hybrid spruces")

670 \$a Protected Areas of British Columbia Act. Bill 17. Certified correct as amended in Committee of the Whole on the 12th day of June, 2000 \$b ("Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve established by Order in Council 699/80")

670 \$a British Columbia Parks WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000 \$b (Chilliwack Lake Provincial Park and Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve)

675 \$a BC Geographical Names Information System WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000; \$a Querying Canadian geographical names WWW site, Aug. 24, 2000; \$a GEOnet, Aug. 24, 2000

781 0 \$z British Columbia \$z Chilliwack River Ecological Reserve

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC

151 \$a Finland \$x History \$y Club War, 1596-1597

450 \$a Club War, Finland, 1596-1597

450 \$a Cudgel War, Finland, 1596-1597

451 \$a Finland \$x History \$y Cudgel War, 1596-1597

550 \$w g \$a Peasant uprisings \$z Finland

670 \$a Work cat: Haavikko, P. Nuijasota, c1996.

670 \$a Singleton, F. A short history of Finland, 1998: \$b p. 34 (Club War, 1597; a rising of Finnish peasants)

670 \$a Jutikkala, E. A history of Finland, c1996: \$b p. 136 (Club War, 1596-1597; rebellion of Finnish farmers led by Duke Charles against Klaus Fleming, royal governor of Finland)

670 \$a Klinge, M. A brief history of Finland, 1988: \$b p. 29 (Club, i.e. 'cudgel', War, 1596-1597)

675 \$a Britannica Macro.

952 \$a SCM H 1200

## *Appendix A*

Backdoor heading established by LC:

008/06 No Decision  
008/39 blank  
040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Peasant uprisings \$z Finland  
952 \$a Prompted by Uk

-----

008/06 No Decision  
008/39 c  
040 \$a FU \$b eng \$c DLC  
151 \$a Fisherman's Wharf (San Francisco, Calif.)  
451 \$a Wharf Number 1 (San Francisco, Calif.)  
550 \$w g \$a Shopping centers \$z California  
550 \$w g \$a Wharves \$z California  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.  
670 \$a Work cat.: Map & guide to Fisherman's Wharf, c1992.  
670 \$a GNIS, Nov. 24, 1999 \$b (Fishermans Wharf, locale, Calif., San Francisco Co., variant names: Fisherman's Wharf, Wharf Number 1)  
670 \$a Fisherman's Wharf Merchants Association WWW home page, Dec. 29, 1999  
\$b ("... San Francisco's most popular destination ... historic waterfront, delicious seafood, spectacular sights, and unique shopping ...")

Backdoor heading created by LC:

008/06 No Decision  
008/39 blank  
040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC  
150 \$a Shopping centers \$z California  
952 \$a Prompted by FU

-----

008/06 No Decision  
008/39 c  
040 \$a UkCU \$b eng \$c DLC  
151 \$a France \$x Intellectual life \$x American influences  
551 \$w g \$a United States \$x Civilization  
670 \$a Work cat.: Le(acute)pouchard, C. Louise Swanton-Belloc (1796-1881) : du bon usage des mode(grave)les anglais et ame(acute)ricains dans les milieux intellectuels du XIXe sie(grave)cle, 1994.  
952 \$a LC pattern: France--Intellectual life--British influences; France--Intellectual life--Italian influences



008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a AzTeS \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Goodnight-Loving Trail
- 451 \$a Goodnight Trail
- 550 \$w g \$a Cattle trails \$z Colorado
- 550 \$w g \$a Cattle trails \$z New Mexico
- 550 \$w g \$a Cattle trails \$z Texas
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Goodnight collection, 1920-1994.
- 670 \$a Encyclop(ae)dia Britannica online, July 14, 2006 \$b (Goodnight-Loving Trail, aka Goodnight Trail; cattle trail running from Young County, Texas to Fort Sumner, N.M. and north to the railhead at Denver. Est. 1866 by Charles Goodnight & Oliver Loving)
- 670 \$a Concise dict. of Amer. hist., 1983: \$b p. 426 (Goodnight-Loving trail; a cattle trail named for Charles Goodnight and Oliver Loving who drove the first herd over this route in 1866; starting near Ft. Belknap, Tex. to Fort Sumner, N.M; an extension of the trail continued north to Denver and Cheyenne)
- 670 \$a Wikipedia, July 14, 2006 \$b (Goodnight-Loving Trail)
- 675 \$a GNIS, July 14, 2006
- 781 0 \$z Goodnight-Loving Trail

Backdoor headings created by LC:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

- 040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Cattle trails \$z Colorado
- 952 \$a Prompted by AzTeS

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

- 040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 150 \$a Cattle trails \$z New Mexico
- 952 \$a Prompted by AzTeS

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a OC \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a John A. Roebling Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
- 451 \$a Covington and Cincinnati Suspension Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
- 451 \$a John A. Roebling Suspension Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
- 451 \$a Ohio Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
- 451 \$a Roebling Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)

**Appendix A**

- 451 \$a Roebing Suspension Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)
- 551 \$w g \$a Bridges \$z Kentucky
- 551 \$w g \$a Bridges \$z Ohio
- 670 \$a Work cat.: The John A. Roebing Suspension Bridge on the Ohio River, 1998.
- 670 \$a The Ohio Bridge, c1939: \$b p. 164 (Covington and Cincinnati Suspension Bridge)
- 670 \$a GNIS, May 18, 2006 \$b (John A. Roebing Bridge, Hamilton County, OH; 39deg.05min.33sec.N, 84deg.30min.35sec.W)
- 781 0 \$z John A. Roebing Bridge (Cincinnati, Ohio, and Covington, Ky.)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a John F. Kennedy Space Center Region (Fla.)
- 451 \$a Kennedy Space Center Region (Fla.)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Development and implementation of a scrub habitat compensation plan for Kennedy Space Center, 1994.
- 781 0 \$z Florida \$z John F. Kennedy Space Center Region

Note: Instructions for establishing headings for regions based on name headings of corporate bodies that are not jurisdictions are found in SCM H 760, sec. 5.

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a MH-P \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County, Tex.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Canyons \$z Texas
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Turpin, S.A. The Lewis Canyon petroglyphs, c1997.
- 670 \$a GNIS, Jan. 31, 2000 \$b (Lewis Canyon, Val Verde county, Tex., 29deg.51min.52sec.N, 101deg.24min.09sec.W; Lewis Canyon, Taylor county, Tex., 32deg.19min.40sec.N, 99deg.57min.40sec.W)
- 781 0 \$z Texas \$z Lewis Canyon (Val Verde County)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Memphremagog, Lake (Qu(acute)ebec and Vt.)
- 451 \$a Lake Memphremagog (Qu(acute)ebec and Vt.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Qu(acute)ebec (Province)
- 550 \$w g \$a Lakes \$z Vermont

- 670 \$a Work cat.: Boucot, A.J. Siluro-Devonian rocks of Lake Memphremagog and their correlatives in the Eastern Townships, 1968.
- 670 \$a Columbia gaz. of North Amer., via WWW, Feb. 2, 2004 \$b (Memphremagog, Lake, in S Que., Canada, and N Vt., Mainly in Que. Lake is c.30 mi/48 km long, with a max. width of 4 mi/6 km. Drains through Magog R. and L. Magog into St. Francis R., Que.)
- 670 \$a GNIS, Feb. 2, 2004 \$b (Memphremagog, Lake, lake, elevation: 682, Vermont, Orleans Co.)
- 670 \$a GEOnet, Feb. 2, 2004 \$b (Memphremagog, Lake, LK, Canada, Quebec, 45deg.05min.00sec.N 072deg.16min.00sec.W)
- 670 \$a Web. geog. \$b (Memphremagog, Lake. Lake, extending across U.S.-Canada border from N Vermont into S Quebec; ab. 30 mi (48 km) long (7 mi. or 11 km. in Vermont) and from 1 to 4 mi. (2 to 6 km.) wide; its outlet flows into the St. Francis River, Quebec)
- 781 0 \$z Memphremagog, Lake (Qu(acute)ebec and Vt.)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.)
- 451 \$a Meridian Avenue North (Seattle and Shoreline, Wash.)
- 550 \$w g \$a Streets \$z Washington (State)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Intersection of N. 40th St. and Meridian Ave. N., January 9, 1924, via the Seattle photographs digital image collection, Feb. 17, 2006.
- 670 \$a AAA (Organization : U.S.). Seattle, Washington, c2005: \$b map recto (Meridian Ave N; begins at Gas Works Park at N Northlake Way in Seattle, runs north, and ends in Shoreline at N 205th St (King Co./Snohomish Co. line); continues in Snohomish Co. in Edmonds as 76th Ave W)
- 670 \$a Mapquest Web site, Feb. 17, 2006 \$b (Meridian Ave N; begins in Seattle at N Northlake Way at boundary of Gas Works Park and runs north through Seattle and through Shoreline; ends in Shoreline at N 205th St at the King Co./Snohomish Co. boundary; street continues in Snohomish Co. as 76th Ave W)
- 781 0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Meridian Avenue (Seattle and Shoreline)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Metropolitan Tract (Seattle, Wash.)
- 451 \$a Denny's Knoll (Seattle, Wash.)
- 451 \$a Metro Tract (Seattle, Wash.)
- 451 \$a Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington (Seattle, Wash.)
- 451 \$a Old University Site (Seattle, Wash.)
- 451 \$a University Tract (Seattle, Wash.)

## Appendix A

- 550 \$w g \$a Real property \$z Washington (State)
- 510 2 \$w g \$a University of Washington \$x Endowments
- 667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Hines, N.O. Denny's knoll : a history of the Metropolitan tract of the University of Washington, c1980: \$b pref. (piece of land once a campus and now a public property at the commercial center of Seattle; ten-acre private gift that has remained a public trust, a university land endowment; the Metropolitan tract is a state property developed by private corporations under lease terms; Metropolitan Building Company left its name on the property) p. 35 (Old University Site) p. 61 (tract of ten acres which was formerly the campus of the University of Washington) p. 80 (University Tract)
- 670 \$a HistoryLink.org, Mar. 31, 2006: \$b Ryan, James M. (UNICO Properties manages the 10-acre parcel of property in the heart of downtown Seattle owned by the University of Washington and known as the Metropolitan Tract) Olympic Hotel (Formerly called "Denny's Knoll," the Metropolitan Tract was a four-block area of downtown donated by Arthur Denny in 1861 for the Territorial University. The University of Washington Board of Regents continued to own the tract after the campus relocated north of Portage Bay in 1895. The area grew in value as Seattle's downtown expanded north from Pioneer Square, and after several false steps, the Regents leased it to the Metropolitan Building Company (MBC) in 1904 to develop it in trust for the University over the next 50 years. (The Tract is now managed by Unico.))
- 670 \$a Sykes, T. University of Washington report on Metropolitan Tract, 2000: \$b attachment B, pp. 1-2 (In 1860, the Legislative Assembly of the Washington Territory est. a university in Seattle, if ten acres were granted from private owners. That land, in what is now downtown Seattle, became the original site of the University of Washington. In 1895, the university moved to its present location. The state retained ownership of the original acreage; however, the University's Board of Regents has developed and managed this "Metropolitan Tract" on behalf of the state since then; Metro Tract)
- 670 \$a The Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington, 1961: \$b v. 1, vii (The Metropolitan Tract of the University of Washington is the ten-acre plot of land in downtown Seattle on which the first University building was erected in 1861; property has been preserved as a University endowment)
- 675 \$a GNIS, Mar. 31, 2006

Backdoor headings created by LC:

008/06 No Decision

008/39 blank

040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC

150 \$a Real property \$z Washington (State)

952 \$a Prompted by WaU

008/06 No Decision  
 008/39 blank  
 040 \$a DLC \$b eng \$c DLC  
 110 2 \$a University of Washington \$x Endowments  
 952 \$a Prompted by WaU

-----

008/06 No Decision  
 008/39 c  
 040 \$a MH-P \$b eng \$c DLC  
 151 \$a Monnikerede (Extinct city)  
 551 \$w g \$a Belgium \$x Antiquities  
 550 \$w g \$a Extinct cities \$z Belgium  
 670 \$a Work cat.: Hillewaert, B. La petite ville de Monnikerede, 1986: \$b p. 5  
 (Monnikerede, a Medieval village that was abandoned) p. 17 (Monnikerede, an  
 archaeological site)  
 675 \$a Archaeological atlas of the world, c1975; \$a Web. geog.; \$a Columbia  
 gazetteer of the world, 1998  
 781 0 \$z Belgium \$z Monnikerede (Extinct city)

-----

008/06 No Decision  
 008/39 c  
 040 \$a OrU \$b eng \$c DLC  
 151 \$a Oregon, Eastern  
 451 \$a Eastern Oregon  
 670 \$a Work cat.: Arts East, summer 2000 \$b (Eastern Oregon)  
 670 \$a Beecherl, J.M. A social profile of Eastern Oregon counties, 1975 \$b (includes  
 the following counties: Hood River, Wasco, Sherman, Jefferson, Deschutes,  
 Crook, Klamath, Lake, Gilliam, Morrow, Umatilla, Grant, Wheeler, Union,  
 Baker, Wallowa, Harney, Malheur)  
 670 \$a St. John, A.D. Eastern Oregon : portrait of the land and its people, 1988.  
 670 \$a Worldmark encyc. of the states, c1995: \$b p. 499 ("The Cascade Range,  
 extending north-south, divides Oregon into distinct eastern and western regions")  
 670 \$a Oregon attractions website, Feb. 9, 2001 \$b (Eastern Oregon; takes up about  
 half (1/2) of Oregon's geography)  
 670 \$a Loy, W.G. Atlas of Oregon, 1976: \$b p. 108 ("The Cascade Range is the  
 backbone of Oregon and divides the state into two broad regions, eastern Oregon  
 and western Oregon.")  
 675 \$a GNIS; \$a Web. geog.; \$a Lippincott  
 781 0 \$z Oregon, Eastern  
 952 \$a LC pattern: Washington (State), Western  
 952 \$a SCM H 760

## Appendix A

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a UkOxU \$b eng \$c DLC

151 \$a Palearctic

451 \$a Palaeartic

550 \$w g \$a Ecological zones

550 \$w g \$a Life zones

670 \$a Work cat.: Tyrberg, T. Pleistocene birds of the Palearctic, 1998.

670 \$a Web. 3 \$b (palaeartic or palearctic: of, relating to, or being a biogeographic region or subregion that includes Europe, Asia north of the Himalayas, northern Arabia, and Africa north of the Sahara)

670 \$a WordIQ.com, Jan. 10, 2006 \$b (The Palearctic or Palaeartic is one of the eight ecozones dividing the Earth surface; physically, the Palearctic is the largest ecozone. It includes the terrestrial ecoregions of Europe, Asia north of the Himalaya foothills, northern Africa, and the northern and central parts of the Arabian Peninsula)

670 \$a American heritage dictionary \$b (Palearctic: of or relating to the biogeographic region that includes Europe, the northwest coast of Africa, and Asia north of the Himalaya mountains, especially with respect to distribution of animals)

781 0 \$z Palearctic

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a SG-SiILA \$b eng \$c DLC

151 \$a Singapore \$x History \$y 1819-1867

670 \$a Work cat.: Buckley, C.B. Anecdotal history of old times in Singapore : from the foundation of the Settlement under the honourable the East India Company on February 6th, 1819 to the transfer of the Colonial Office as part of the colonial possessions of the Crown on April 1st, 1867, 1969.

670 \$a Encyc. Americana: \$b v. 24, p. 841 (Singapore's modern history begins with an Englishman, Thomas Stamford Raffles. In 1819 Raffles acquired the island from the Malay Sultan of Johor on behalf of the British East India Company. The British colonial office began in 1867 to administer the island directly.)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

040 \$a MH \$b eng \$c DLC

151 \$a Supernova 1054

451 \$a SN 1054 (Astronomy)

451 \$a SN1054 (Astronomy)

551 \$w g \$a Crab Nebula

550 \$w g \$a Supernovae

- 667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Lupato, G. SN1054 : una supernova sul medioevo, 1997.
- 670 \$a Weigert, A. Concise encyc. of ast., 1976 \$b (its residue is the Crab Nebula)
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Supernova 1987A

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Tri-Cities (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Tri-City (Wash.)
- 670 \$a Work cat.: Payne, L. Tri-Cities profile, 2001.
- 670 \$a Pasco Chamber of Commerce. Tri-Cities street and points of interest map, 1999?
- 670 \$a Benton-Franklin Regional Council. Tri-Cities bicycle guide map, 1997.
- 670 \$a Polk city directory. Tri-Cities, Washington, 1996: \$b t.p. ("Including: Pasco, Kennewick, Richland, and West Richland")
- 670 \$a Tri-Cities Visitor & Convention Bureau home page, Aug. 15, 2003 \$b (Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland)
- 670 \$a Columbia gaz. of the world, c1998 \$b (in entry for Richland, Wash.: one of the Tri-Cities (a fast-growing metropolis) along with Pasco and Kennewick; in entry for Pasco, Wash.: one of the Tri-Cities; with Kennewick and Richland it forms the fast-growing Tri-City area that developed during World War II, when the Dept. of Energy's Hanford Works were constructed nearby)
- 670 \$a Tri-City herald, Aug. 15, 2003, viewed via WWW \$b (Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland, Washington)
- 670 \$a City of Pasco home page, Aug. 15, 2003: \$b about Pasco/recreation (the area offers professional sports teams: the Tri-City Americans Hockey Team and Tri-City Dust Devils Single A Baseball)
- 675 \$a GNIS, Aug. 15, 2003
- 681 \$i Here are entered works discussing collectively the cities of Kennewick, Pasco, and Richland, Washington.
- 781 0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Tri-Cities
- 952 \$a LC pattern: Quad Cities (Ill. and Iowa)

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a WaU \$b eng \$c DLC
- 151 \$a Washington State Route 520 (Wash.)
- 451 \$a Route 520 (Wash.)
- 451 \$a S.R. 520 (Wash.)
- 451 \$a SR 520 (Wash.)
- 451 \$a State Route 520 (Wash.)

## Appendix A

- 550 \$w g \$a Roads \$z Washington (State)  
670 \$a Work cat.: Report of SR-520/I-5 noise study, 1993.  
670 \$a Wikipedia, Feb. 2, 2006 \$b (Washington State Route 520 is a freeway in the state of Washington, U.S.A. It extends 12.82 miles from Seattle in the west to Redmond in the east.)  
670 \$a Washington State highways web site, Feb. 2, 2006 \$b (State Route 520. Length: 14 miles. Type: Freeway entire distance. SR-520 originates at I-5 in Seattle and crosses Lake Washington over the Evergreen Point Floating Bridge. It intersects I-405 in Bellevue and continues east into Redmond, ending at SR-202)  
675 \$a GNIS, Feb. 2, 2006  
781 0 \$z Washington (State) \$z Washington State Route 520

-----

008/06 No Decision

008/39 c

- 040 \$a Uk \$b eng \$c DLC  
151 \$a Wren's Nest National Nature Reserve (Dudley, England)  
550 \$w g \$a National parks and reserves \$z England  
550 \$w g \$a Natural areas \$z England  
667 \$a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.  
670 \$a Work cat.: Cutler, A. Wren's Nest National Nature Reserve, 1990: \$b inside front cover (the West Midlands' most important and popular geological site)  
670 \$a English Nature web site, 26 Apr. 2006: \$b national nature reserves (Wren's Nest NNR is an urban geological site managed by Dudley Metropolitan Borough Council)  
670 \$a Dudley Metropolitan Borough Council web site, 26 Apr. 2006: \$b nature reserves (Wren's Nest National Nature Reserve, Dudley)



## Appendix B. MARC Organization Codes Used in Examples

ABAU	University of Alabama at Birmingham
ATLA	American Theological Library Association
AuSU	University of Sydney
AzTeS	Arizona State University
CaAE	Edmonton (Alta.) Public Library
CaAEUS	University of Alberta, Special Collections Dept.
CaBVa	Vancouver (B.C.) Public Library
CaOONL	National Library of Canada
CoLwJCPL	Jefferson County (Colo.) Public Library
CoU-DA	University of Colorado, Denver Auraria Library
CSfA	California Academy of Sciences
CSt	Stanford University
DGPO	U.S. Government Printing Office
DHMM	U.S. Holocaust Memorial Museum
DLC	U.S. Library of Congress
DNA	U.S. National Archives and Records Administration
DNAL	U.S. National Agricultural Library
FU	University of Florida
ICLAM	Leather Archives & Museum
IeDuTC	University of Dublin, Trinity College
IEN	Northwestern University
InIU-L	Indiana University-Purdue University Indianapolis, Law Library
InU	Indiana University
ItFiC	Casalini Libri
LiViLNB	Martynas Mažvydas National Library of Lithuania
MdU	University of Maryland, College Park
MH	Harvard University
MH-A	Harvard University, Arnold Arboretum
MH-P	Harvard University, Peabody Museum
MMiltC	Curry College
MU	University of Massachusetts, Amherst
NcD	Duke University
NdMinS	Minot State University
NjP	Princeton University
NmU	University of New Mexico
NNC	Columbia University
NNC-EA	Columbia University, C.V. Starr East Asian Library
NNMM	Metropolitan Museum of Art
NNYU-HJ	Yeshiva University, Gottesman Library of Hebraica/Judaica
OC	Public Library of Cincinnati and Hamilton County
OCl	Cleveland (Ohio) Public Library
OkS	Oklahoma State University
OrU	University of Oregon
PHC	Haverford College

## ***Appendix B***

RPB-M	Brown University, Music Library
SG-SiILA	Singapore Integrated Library Automation Services
TxCM	Texas A & M University
TxFACM	Amon Carter Museum
TxLT	Texas Tech University
TxU	University of Texas, Austin
Uk	British Library
UkCU	University of Cambridge
UkLCIA	Courtauld Institute of Art
UkOxU	Oxford University, Bodleian Library
VaVbRU	Regent University
ViU	University of Virginia
WaEIC	Central Washington University
WaU	University of Washington
WIAbNL	National Library of Wales